



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

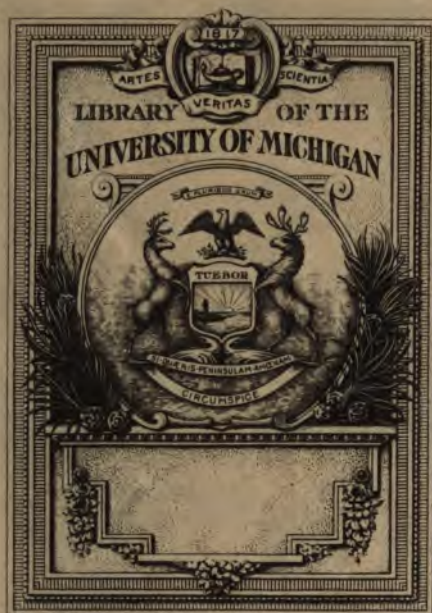
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

B 1,089,226



From the Library of
P. J. Klaphaak

1245
EYE
1877



820.5
R 78

1897

DUTCH AND ENGLISH COMPARED,

WITH AN

APPENDIX

containing the rules of

ENGLISH GRAMMAR,

BY

P. ROORDA,

Teacher of English at the Gymnasium and the 'G. H. B. S.',
Groningen.

PART I.

(GRAMMATICAL.)

SECOND



EDITION.

P. NOORDHOFF. — 1897. — GRONINGEN.

f 1.90.

DUTCH AND ENGLISH COMPARED,

WITH AN

. APPENDIX

containing the rules of

ENGLISH GRAMMAR,

BY

P. ROORDA,

Teacher of English at the Gymnasium and the 'G. H. B. S.',
Groningen.

PART I.

(GRAMMATICAL.)



SECOND EDITION.

P. NOORDHOFF. — 1897. — GRONINGEN.



820.5

R78

1897

v. 1

BUHR

NO

020

From the library of
P. J. Kloppe
3-19-37

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

This book will consist of two parts, one part treating of grammar, the other containing pieces for translation.

The grammar part is a kind of supplement to the second volume of my 'Engelsche Spraakkunst', and is intended more especially for those who are reading for an examination, and for those who require, or desire, a better insight into the structure of the English language than can be given in more elementary schoolbooks.

I have not aimed at being exhaustive, and exceptions of frequent occurrence only will be found in this book. As the title denotes, comparison between Dutch and English has been my chief purpose. To accomplish this I have taken sentences from the best authors, which the learner will have to translate into correct and idiomatic Dutch; from these sentences I have drawn a grammatical rule, which finds application in the rendering of the Dutch sentences immediately following. The English sentences are more numerous than the Dutch, which I have intended only as a test for the learner to show that he has mastered the rule. In paragraphs registering facts depending upon usage only, or which could not be brought under a general rule, Dutch sentences are but occasionally given.

The Dutch reflexive verbs in § 146 have been arranged alphabetically.

A list of the more difficult words has been added.

Remarks will be thankfully accepted, especially such as may serve to show that I have failed in my endeavour to exclude rules not founded upon well-established usage.

My kindest thanks to those good friends who have assisted me in correcting the proofs.

GRONINGEN, March 1892.

P. ROORDA.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

The principal difference between the present edition and the former is that an Appendix has been added, containing, in regular order, all the Rules of Grammar illustrated in my '*Engelsche Spraakkunst voor Schoolgebruik*', *Deel I*; *Deel I (Supplement)*; *Deel II*, and in this volume. The addition has been made in order to give the learner a complete survey of the whole subject. The preposition only has been excluded, having been fully treated, from different points of view, in *Deel I (Supplement)*, and *Deel II*.

A few difficulties have been explained in footnotes, and some necessary additions and corrections have been made, many of which I owe to the kindness of some among my colleagues, to whom I tender my best thanks.

GRONINGEN, November 1896.

P. ROORDA.

CONTENTS.

	Page.
CHAPTER I. The Article	1.
Omission of the Definite Article.	1.
Use of the Definite Article.	13.
The Indefinite Article.	17.
CHAPTER II. The Noun	26.
Compounds	40.
CHAPTER III. The Adjective	41.
Degrees of Comparison	41.
Use of One	47.
The Adjective as a Noun	50.
Place of the Adjective	52.
Some Miscellaneous Observations	57.
CHAPTER IV. Numerals	60.
CHAPTER V. Place of the Subject	62.
CHAPTER VI. Pronouns	74.
Personal Pronouns	74.
Possessive Pronouns	82.
Demonstrative Pronouns.	85.
Relative Pronouns	90.
Interrogative Pronouns	100.
Indefinite Pronouns and Numerals	102.

	Page
CHAPTER VII. The Verb	111.
To Be, to Do, Shall, Will, etc.	111.
Laten and Worden.	124.
The Infinitive.	126.
The Gerund	136.
Participles	140.
The Passive Voice.	145.
The Reflexive Verb	149.
The Subjunctive Mood	155.
 CHAPTER VIII. The Adverb	 162.
Place of the Adverb	176.
 CHAPTER IX. The Conjunction	 179
Appendix, containing the rules of English Grammar	197.
 Vocabulary	 249.

DIRECTIONS TO STUDENTS.

Dutch words in parentheses are not translated.

Dutch words in parentheses preceded by =, indicate the way in which the sentence must be translated.

Dutch words in *italics* placed between parentheses, are not used in Dutch, but must be translated into English.

English words in parentheses are the translation of the Dutch words immediately preceding.

English words in *italics* enclosed between parentheses are wanted in the English translation, but have no corresponding equivalents in the Dutch sentences.

I has the sound of *e* in Eng. *me*.

CHAPTER I.

THE ARTICLE.

OMISSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. London is probably **the worst governed of English cities.**
2. You will hardly believe now that thirty years ago she **was the handsomest of all the lasses I knew.**
3. **First among English scholars, first among English theologians, first among English historians,** it is with Bede († 735) that English literature may be said to begin.
4. Thus perished this good and excellent woman, the truest Christian, the most charitable friend to the poor and needful, **the best and most affectionate of mothers.**
5. I remember you **a buck of bucks** when I made your acquaintance at Calcut'ta.
6. It is sad to lose a friend whom, for years, you have **cherished in your heart of hearts.**

§ 1. After a superlative the definite article is not used in the translation of *der, van de, onder de* = *van al de, van alle*, except when a qualifying adjunct or clause follows.

As in Dutch we say *de dag der dagen* for *de belangrijkste, de beste van alle dagen*, so in English the superlative may be replaced by the singular of the noun following, as *a buck of bucks* (de grootste van alle fatten), *my heart of hearts* (het diepste van mijn hart), *a friend of friends* (een vriend boven alle andere vrienden).

I. Ofschoon hij een van de beroemdste der levende schrijvers is, had zij toch *geen* (= niet een) enkel van zijne werken gelezen.

II. Hij stond op en stelde voor (op) de gezondheid (te drinken).

ken) van zijn gastheer, wiens deugden hij buitensporig prees, en dien hij een der beste stervelingen *noemde* (pronounced to be).

III. Zijn vader twijfelde er *in 't geheel niet* (never) aan, dat al zijne *dadēn* (doings) *naar behooren* (right) waren, en dat zijn jongen de beste van alle zoons was.

IV. Voordat hij verliefd wordt, heeft iedere knaap een vriend boven alle andere vrienden, een boezemvriend *bij uitnemendheid* (= der boezemvrienden), aan wien hij *verbazend lange* (immense) brieven schrijft in de vacantie, en dien hij koestert in het diepste van zijn hart.

7. The hour for breakfast in **Old England** was nine o'clock. This meal consisted probably of bread, meat, and ale, but was a lighter repast than that taken when the hurry of the day was over.

8. Milton was intimately acquainted with every language of **modern Europe** from which either pleasure or information was then to be derived.

9. Last night I dreamt that I was back in Bingen, **fair Bingen** on the Rhine, and that I saw the golden sunlight rest on its green hills.

10. The ancient city built by Alexander the Great, and which was burnt down in the year 640, stood to the south of **the present Alexandri'a**.

11. **The beautiful town of Constantino'ple** occupies a promontory in the Sea of Marmora, and is washed by the sea on all sides except the west.

§ 2. Names of countries and towns may be preceded by an adjective without requiring the definite article, but only in elevated style and poetry, or when adjective and noun form one name, as '*T is Greece — but living Greece no more!*' (Byron); *ancient Rome; modern Athens; rural England; merry England*. (Cf. *Gelukkig Arabië*).

In every-day English we translate *het onmetelijk groote Londen*, *het rijke Amsterdam*, *het nijvere Manchester* by *the immense town of London*, *the rich town of Amsterdam*, *the busy town of Manchester*. We sometimes, but rarely, use the same construction as in Dutch; see 10.

V. Zij woonden in het bloeiende N., een dorpje gelegen aan den oostelijken oever der rivier.

VI. Het zonnige Italië, waar de hemel altijd blauw en het gras altijd groen is, waar de bloemen nooit ontbreken, is het land mijner geboorte.

VII. Midden in het groote Londen ligt een kleine buurt, bestaande uit een doolhof van nauwe straten en *pleintjes* (court), die *bekend is onder* (goes by) den naam van Klein-Brittanje.

VIII. Zonder bondgenooten zou het voor *het groote Rusland* (= Rusland, groot als het is.) onmogelijk zijn den oorlog voort te zetten.

12. It was only at very great intervals that **quiet little Lady Mildred** would go up to London for a week or so.

13. **Honest Tom** never gave up a comrade as long as he was the friend of a great man.

14. **Old Fezziwig** laid down his pen, and looked up at the clock, which pointed to the hour of seven.

15. It befell that **the good-natured Lady Fareham** intended to give a ball the next week, and, meeting Clive in the Park, she invited him to the entertainment.

16. A cab was straightway sent for, and in another half hour we were in the presence of **the courtly little old Mr. Luce**, in his chambers in Lincoln's Inn Fields. ¹⁾

¹⁾ *Lincoln's Inn* is one of the four inns of court (the others are *Gray's Inn*, *the Inner Temple*, and *the Middle Temple*), which have the privilege of calling students to the bar. Each of these inns is governed

§ 3. In familiar style the definite article is often omitted before proper names of persons preceded by an adjective. This is done especially when the adjective and proper noun form one name by which we are accustomed to address, or to speak of, a person. So was Queen Elizabeth spoken of as *Good Queen Bess*; Henry VIII. was called *Bluff King Hål*, occasionally *Bluff Harry*; *poor Richard*, *poor Tom*, *tiny Tim*, etc., are each considered as one name.

IX. Sir John Cömyrn werd naar zijn blozende gelaatskleur en zijn rood haar de Roode Comyn genoemd, om hem te onderscheiden van zijn bloedverwant, den zwarten Comyn, die een donkere gelaatskleur en zwart haar had.

X. Het was zeker niet de schuld van den armen mijnheer Turner, dat zijne dochter *zich door den oudsten zoon van Lord S. het hof liet maken* (= den oudsten zoon van Lord S. toestond haar het hof te maken); want, zooals iedereen wist, had de Heer Turner niet meer *over* zijne dochter *te zeggen* (to have authority over), dan over den keizer van China.

XI. Iedereen hield van het lieve kleine meisje. Zelfs de afgunstige Maria sprak nooit kwaad van haar.

XII. De edelmoedige en dappere Karel aarzelde geen oogenblik. Hij ging terug naar de straat, waar zijn vriend was gevallen, nam hem op zijne schouders en droeg hem naar eene plaats, waar hij betrekkelijk veilig was.

17. **The Prince of Wales** attended the wedding of **Prince Henry** of Prussia and **Princess Irene** of Hesse.

18. Laura frankly owned that she liked Clive better with-

by a committee, generally formed of Queen's Counsel (see note, p. 26), called benchers, who are a self-elected body. The inns consist of a hall, a chapel, a library, a suite of rooms devoted to the benchers, and a number of buildings divided into sets of chambers, occupied for the most part by barristers, solicitors, and law students.

out his wife than with her, and never ceased to regret that little Rosey had not bestowed her little hand upon **Captain Goby**, as she had been very well disposed at one time to do.

19. **The Countess of Kew** liked Brighton especially in May and June. Then she could take the air upon the pier without being stifled by the cigars of the numerous visitors.

20. At the outbreak of a fresh rising **the Archbishop of York** was thrown into prison.

21. **The Empress of Austria** and **the Archduchess Valerie** will arrive at Ischl on June 2nd for a few weeks' stay.

22. With the accession of **Queen Victoria** ended the union of England and Han'over under the same sovereigns, the latter state passing to the male heir, Ernest, **Duke of Cumberland**.

23. The ceremony took place in the presence of **the Archduke Louis**, **the Archduchess Maria Theresa**, and many thousands of spectators.

24. In 1858 **Lord Palmerston** proposed an alteration in the law respecting conspiracies, in consequence of an attempt to assassinate **the Emperor Napoleon III.**, which was believed to have originated on English ground.

25. The Queen, with **Prince and Princess Henry** of Battenberg, **the Princess Frederica** of Hānover, and **Princess Victoria** of Battenberg, left Balmöral for Win(d)sor.

26. The book was translated for English readers by **Lady Mary Lloyd** under the title of 'Memoirs of the **Prince de Joinville**'.

§ 4. When a title is immediately followed by a proper name, the definite article is not used, except before some foreign titles, such as *emperor*, *empress*, *czar*, *czarina*, *archduke*, *archduchess*, *grandduke*, *grandduchess*, *margrave*, *margravine*, and sometimes before *princess* and *lady*.

When, however, the title is followed by *of* (in French names by *de*) the definite article is required, except in *appositions* (bijstellingen), as *the Duke of Northumberland*, *the King of Holland*, but *William, King of Holland*.

Note that we say *General von der Tann*, *Count von Moltke*, *Baron von Schrader*, etc., and that we sometimes omit the definite article when the title is followed by *de*, as *Count de Fancigny*, *General de Miribel*.

XIII. Bij het verdeelingsverdrag van 1700 werden Spanje, de Nederlanden en de Indische bezittingen toegewezen aan den tweeden zoon van den keizer, Aartshertog Karel.

XIV. Keizer Wilhelm is hier van avond om 7 uur aangekomen en is toen gereden naar het kasteel, waar hij dadelijk (*eene*) receptie heeft gehouden.

XV. De veldtocht van 1706 onderscheidde zich door de nederlaag der Franschen onder Maarschalk Villeroy. Het Engelsche leger werd aangevoerd door den Hertog van Marlborough.

27. Many men who have money are as short of wit as a hog is of wool; they are under years of discretion though they are turned of **forty** (al over de 40 zijn).

28. Nineteen Londoners in **twenty** have not the slightest acquaintance with any of the docks belonging to this great commercial port.

29. He pointed out to us ever so many of the great people. I forget **half** their names.

§ 5. In Dutch we often use the definite article before a numeral; in English this may be done only when there is a qualifying adjunct. *De helft* denoting quantity or number is translated by *half*.

XVI. De boom was over de veertig voet hoog, zoodat wij, in den top gezeten, de geheele vlakte konden overzien.

XVII. In negen van de tien gevallen ¹⁾ vindt de deugdzame ook hier op aarde zijne belooning.

¹⁾ We may also say: *in nine cases out of ten*, or *in nine out of ten cases*.

in next year's almanac you will find his name in the list of **Military Knights Commanders** ¹⁾.

§ 31. Compounds consisting of an attributive possessive and noun, deviate from the general rule for the formation of the plural of compound names, and inflect not only the last noun, but also the noun in the possessive case: *a farmer's wife = the wife of a farmer; farmer's wives = the wives of farmers.*

Note the exception in 140; *sailor's clothes = such clothes as a sailor wears.*

When a compound contains two titles, they are both inflected, as *knights commanders, knights templars, lords justices, lords lieutenants*, etc.

XCVIII. Er waren eenige officiersvrouwen in het gezelschap, die ons veel nieuws wisten te vertellen van de veldslagen, die in de laatste twee maanden geleverd waren.

XCIX. Zoodra de scheepspapieren in orde waren, werd het schip de haven uitgesleept, en spoedig waren wij in *volle* (the open) zee.

C. Niemand wist, welken van deze bisschopszetels aan hem zou worden gegeven.

§ 32. Mark the following expressions in which the noun is often left out in English.

142. The 7th (regiment) Bengal cavalry embarked at Calcutta on board the Nerbudda.

¹⁾ The Knights of 'The Most Honourable Order of the Bath' belong to three classes, each containing two sub-divisions: 1^a. Military Knights Grand Cross (G. C. B.), 1^b. Civil Knights Grand Cross (G. C. B.); 2^a. Military Knights Commanders (K. C. B.), 2^b. Civil Knights Commanders (K. C. B.); 3^a. Military Companions (C. B.), 3^b. Civil Companions (C. B.)

68. It is even now **a question** whether we had not better entrust it to him; he knows everything relating to these affairs.

69. The father vowed that, if any servant **laid a hand** on the child, he would thrash him first, and then discharge him.

70. By pushing steadily, nine hundred and ninety-nine people in **a thousand** will yield to you.

71. When all the company were gone, and she was left alone with her husband, she gave (a) **vent** to her tears, and sobbed, and would not be comforted.

72. He had lately married **a second time**, and though he was over forty, he had chosen for his wife a young girl of eighteen or nineteen, who had never yet seen anything of the world.

§ 15. In Dutch we sometimes use the definite article, and in English the indefinite when we do not speak of one particular person or object. Thus in *ninety-nine cases out of a hundred*, we may take any hundred. (See, however, § 5, bearing in mind that *hundred* and *thousand* always take the indefinite article when no other adjunct precedes.)

Note to be at an end (ten einde zijn).

XLVII. Het is nog de vraag, of hij eerlijk *aan* het geld *gekomen* (to come by) is, en indien dit het geval niet is, wil ik er geen stuiver van aannemen.

XLVIII. Ik mag niet graag met hem spelen; want, als je hem maar met den vinger aanraakt, begint hij al te schreeuwen.

II. Je behoeft (het) niet (voor) de tweede maal te probeeren; want nu je hem eens hebt beet genomen, zal hij je nooit weer vertrouwen.

L. In negentig van de honderd gevallen zult gij met ondank beloond worden, indien gij u mengt in een twist tusschen man en vrouw.

LI. Gij hebt mij dikwijls beloofd, dat gij *met* deze zaak *de proef zoudt nemen* (to give a trial); wanneer denkt gij het te doen?

155. Journeying down the Rhine on a **summer('s) day**, you have perhaps felt the sunshine made dreary by those ruined villages, which stud the banks in certain parts of its course.

§ 33. Great attention should be paid to the translation of compounds from Dutch into English. Very often two words are required, as *watery plain* (watervlakte), *earthy smell* (grondlucht), *icy mass* (ijsmassa); sometimes the preposition *of* is used, as *bird of passage* (trekvoegel), *bird of ill omen* (ongeluksvoegel), *beast of burden* (lastdier).

CI. Het kind had eene kleurdoos naast zich en zat geduldig te kleuren, wel een paar uur achterelkaar.

CII. Hij trotseert de gevaren van eenen ontdekkingsstocht beter dan eenig ander reiziger en behoudt zijne kalmte zelfs bij het grootste doodsgevaar.

CIII. Zijn vader, grootvader en overgrootvader hebben allen *hun graf in de golven* (a watery grave) gevonden.

CIV. De ondernemingsgeest, die hem bezielt, doet hem uitmunten boven andere jongelieden van zijnen leeftijd.

CV. Op een mooien herfstdag aanvaardden wij onze reis en verlieten het ouderlijk huis, dat wij eerst na een tijdsverloop van twee of drie jaren zouden terugzien.

CHAPTER III.

THE ADJECTIVE.

DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

156. You know as well as I that the girl is not good enough for him, but it would be the **very stupidest** thing in the world to tell him so.

157. She took the **very oddest** way of showing her affection that ever I heard of.

158. It was his fortune to be almost always opposed to troops **far superior** in discipline to his own, though he was **by far the best** general of his age.

159. It is the **best** plan **by far** not to let him know the day of our departure.

160. I think this is the **best of all**; I'll take this.

§ 34. The superlative is strengthened by *very*, *by far*, (which may be put before or after the superlative), *of all*. Sometimes two of these are combined, as *She is the very best of all my nieces* (ze is de allerbeste van mijne nichten).

Veel before a comparative is rendered by *far*, *much*, *greatly*, etc.

CVI. Een nog wreeder slag bracht hij zijne moeder toe, verreweg de wreedste, dien hij haar kon toebrengen, toen hij haar zeide, dat al zijne ongelukken slechts een gevolg waren van de slechte opvoeding, die zij hem gegeven had.

CVII. De alleroudste man, dien ik ooit gezien had, opende de deur en vroeg mij, wat ik verlangde.

CVIII. Dat was het allerruwste, wat gij zeggen kondt, en dat nog wel tegen de zachtste van alle vrouwen.

CIX. Dit is verreweg het beste boek, dat ik in de laatste jaren gelezen heb. De stijl is veel beter dan die der meeste romans, en de karakters zijn uitstekend *ontworpen* (to conceive).

161. He is one of the **best** and **most honest** men I have ever had to do with.

162. I do not think he is at all like his brother. He is **darker** and **more slender**, and his eye tells me that he is not to be trusted.

163. The cottage-homes and hamlets of England are considered **more neat** and **attractive** than those of any other country.

§ 35. When two adjectives precede a noun, one of which is compared by adding *er* and *est*, while the other forms its

degrees of comparison by prefixing *more* and *most*, that with *er* and *est* comes first, or both take *more* and *most*.

CX. Mij dunkt, dat hij geen betere en meer bevredigende verklaring had kunnen geven.

CXI. De kostbaarste en zeldzaamste boeken trachtte men natuurlijk het eerst te redden; vandaar dat een zoo groot gedeelte van het gebouw is afgebrand.

CXII. Dit is het geriefelijkste en mooiste gedeelte van het geheele huis.

§ 36. Note the following translations of Dutch comparatives and superlatives.

164. *Of late years* (in de laatste jaren) private carriages have become almost universal among the richer classes of these two towns.

165. The part of the mill she liked best was the *topmost* story, where there were the great heaps of grain, which she could sit on and slide down continually.

166. The aims of the prime minister reached *beyond* (verder dan) this outer revival of good government and prosperity.

167. There was a class of *lesser* ¹⁾ (minder) nobles, on whom the older barons of the Conquest looked down in scorn.

168. On the *farther side* (andere kant, overkant) of the canal are seen undulating meadows and leafless woods, through which the autumn-wind has passed.

169. The vigorous and warlike king with his large host proved a *different foe from* (een andere vijand dan) the bands of pirates which had for long years infested the country.

¹⁾ The *lesser rivers* (kleinere rivieren), the *lesser poets* (de dichters van den tweeden rang); in these expressions lesser = minor. Note that we say, My garden is *smaller* (kleiner) than yours; I have *less* (minder) patience than you. *Least* occasionally means *kleinste*, *geringste*, as *Of two evils choose the least*.

170. William flung himself into *the first* (de eerste de beste) boat he found, and crossed the Channel in face of a storm.

171. He managed his father-in-law's inn, which is *the second largest* (op één na de grootste) here, and drives a good business, having put his own capital into the enterprise.

172. It must be confessed that he loved this place where he could play billiards with *the first comer* (de eerste de beste).

173. Now that she is out of the way for the *greater* (best) part of two hours, we can make everything ready.

174. Nothing opens the eyes *like* (beter dan) suffering.

175. They swore in their heart of hearts that it was *the shame of shames* (de grootste schande) to see the noblest woman in their midst tied to such a wretched fellow (see § 1).

CXIII. De eerste de beste jongen, dien gij ziet, kan u den weg naar het kasteel wijzen.

CXIV. *Meer dan* (beyond) dit heb ik u *niet* (= niets) te zeggen, en bedenken wel, dat hij in geen enkel opzicht minder is dan gij.

CXV. Hij is een geheel ander man dan zijn broer, die over niets dan over zaken kan spreken, en wiens eenig doel is geld te verdienen.

176. One, a man of about forty, was one of the **biggest-chested** and **longest-armed** men I ever saw.

177. He thought to domineer over us though he was the **worst-behaved**, and certainly one of the stupidest boys of the school.

178. Though he was the **stoutest-hearted** boy alive, yet he shrunk back from this dangerous undertaking.

§ 37. Compound adjectives consisting of an adjective or adverb and a participle or word such as *cheded*, *hearted*, which has the form of a past participle, inflect the first part in forming the degrees of comparison.

CXVI. Zij is eene van de meest ontwikkelde (goed ontwikkeld = well-informed) dames, met wie ik kennis heb gemaakt.

CXVII. Daar waren verscheidene knappe kinderen. Één vooral trok mijne aandacht, de meest zwartharige jongen, dien ik ooit gezien heb.

CXVIII. De best opgevoede kinderen zijn wel eens een enkele maal onbeleefd.

CXIX. Ik wil gaarne toegeven, dat hij goedhartiger is, dan ik eerst had gedacht; maar dat neemt niet weg, dat hij in 't geheel geen aangenaam mensch is.

§ 38. Note the following comparisons:

In this town pretty faces are as plentiful as blackberries.

He could see into a millstone as far as most people. (Hij was al even schrander (taken ironically) als enz.; hij was al even dom als enz.).

She is as merry as a cricket.

He is as true as steel.

The child has been as good as gold.

He sat in the saddle as straight as an arrow (as a dart).

I am as busy as a bee.

You are always as cool as a cucumber.

He was as pleased as Punch.

She is as cross as two sticks.

The old man was as sour as a crab.

I am as happy as the day is long.

It is as dull (flat) as ditchwater.

He is as mute as a fish.

The young man was as grave as a judge.

He was as ugly as a scare-crow.

He is as pale as death (as ashes, as a ghost).

He is as white as a sheet.

As greedy as a hog, as ravenous as a wolf.

I am as blind as a bat.

He is as cunning as a fox and as sharp as a needle.

It is as white as snow, as black as night.

Marley was as dead as a doornail.

It is as clear as crystal.

I am as deaf as a post.

He is as rich as Croesus, but as stupid as an ass.

179. The writer of these veracious pages was once walking through a splendid English palace, standing amidst parks and gardens, **than which** nothing more magnificent has been since the days of Alad'din.

180. She showed her friendship by abusing all her intimate acquaintances to her new confidante, **than which** there cannot be a more touching proof of regard.

181. I should like to know the opinion of your father, **than whom** I do not know a nobler and honester man.

§ 39. At the beginning of a relative clause *than* is sometimes found, which in this case precedes the relative pronoun (in the objective case), as also the comparative. This construction is not used in every-day English.

CXX. Ik heb langer dan dertig jaar in dit huis gewoond, — en een geriefelijker bestaat er zeker niet —, zoodat het mij leed doet het te verlaten.

CXXI. Gij weet, dat ik altijd de grootste achting gehad heb voor onzen aanvoerder; een braver man dan hij is niet gemakkelijk te vinden.

182. The colonel loved his nephew **no better** than before, though we must say that after the old man's return from India the young baronet's conduct had been very friendly.

183. He is **very** unhappy, but he is **not more** to be pitied than you.

184. You were **no taller** than my boot when I first saw you, but that is twenty years ago, and you have grown since that time.

185. If you are **not more careful** than that, you will soon have broken all the china.

186. He has **no more** than five guilders left.

§ 40. Before comparatives in *er*, and before the irregular comparatives, the Dutch *niet* is generally translated by *no*, but when the adjective is preceded by *more*, *not* is used, *no more . . . than* being rendered by *evenmin* — *als*.

not more (niet meer, even veel) truth than honour.

no more (even weinig) truth than honour.

no (not) less (even veel, niet minder) truth than honour.

CXXII. Hij is niet meer. Niet langer behoeft hij de pijnen te dulden, die hem gedurende zoovele jaren hebben gekweld.

CXXIII. Hij is niet eerzuchtiger dan een van ons; waarom worden hem verwijtingen gedaan, die met niet minder recht tot ons gericht konden worden?

CXXIV. Met niet minder ijver dan zorg hebt gij steeds mijne belangen behartigd, zoodat gij werkelijk recht hebt op het deelgenootschap, dat ik u aanbied.

CXXV. Het gedicht is niet slechter dan de meeste van dat soort; ik kan er echter geen grooteren lof aan schenken.

CXXVI. Wij hoopten, dat er nog andere en betere tijdingen zouden komen; maar het nieuws was, helaas! niet minder droevig dan waar.

USE OF ONE.

187. The story his mamma told him was **a very curious one**; he was obliged to hear it two or three times before he could understand it.

188. Sometimes in earnest he found himself wishing that his own past life had been **a better one**, and that there had been less in it which the pure, childish heart would shrink from if it knew the truth.

189. He thought his life **a most lucky and reputable one**.

§ 41. A predicative adjective in Dutch is often rendered in English by the indefinite article and the attributive adjective followed by **one**.

CXXVII. „Zal het haar spijten, dat ik wegga?” dacht hij. Maar neen, ze zei heel onverschillig, dat, naar zij dacht, de reis aangenaam moest zijn en hem goed zou doen.

CXXVIII. Mijne meening is niet zonderling, zooals gij schijnt te denken.

CXXIX. De keuze is wijs; maar mij dunk, het zou hem aangenaam geweest zijn, indien hij niet had behoeven te kiezen.

CXXX. Zij heeft een *levensdoel* (purpose in life), en dat doel is heilig. Waarom zoudt gij trachten hare gedachten daarvan af te leiden?

CXXXI. „Ik zou wel graag naar hem toe willen gaan om hem er over te spreken; maar ik weet niet, waar hij woont.” — „Weet je niet, waar hij woont? *Neen, maar die is goed* (that is a good one). Hij woont al drie jaar vlak naast je.”

190. Your property adjoins the **more extensive one** of my uncle; did not you know yet?

191. I could construe, without an English translation, all the easy Latin authors, and many of the **more difficult ones**, with it.

192. Cares may be superfluous, even the **holiest ones**.

§ 42. After a comparative, and even after a superlative, *one* is sometimes used, especially when the degrees of comparison are formed by more and most.

XXII. Zorgen laten altijd sporen achter, de zwaarste tijd de diepste.

XXIII. Dat was een kostbare reis; maar verleden jaar ik een nog veel duurdere maken naar het midden van id.

His house was a **corner one**, and situated in one of the quietest parts of the town.

Let us see which of the two doors we can open most easily. I shall try the **front one**.

3. After nouns doing duty for adjectives *one* may also be used.

XXIV. Deze boeken zijn zeer zwaar; gij kunt ze onmogelijk alle dragen. Neem gij het *onderste* (bottom), ik zal de andere naar de kamer brengen.

XXV. Daar staat de trein. Zullen wij instappen? dan laten wij onze plaatsen uitkiezen. Ik houd het meest van de eerste plaatsje.

Everywhere **small** establishments have been swallowed up by **large**.

They are virtues which were more common among the sons of the **old** school than among those of the **new**.

Seventy years ago seals abounded in these caves, but they reared their **young**.

4. When one adjective is contrasted with another, or when adjectives are used in an enumeration, *one* is often left out. "We have three rooms: a red, a blue and a brown." The word *one* (jongen van dieren) is often found instead of *young ones*.

XXVI. De koning van Spanje was machtig. Bij de oude Wereld voegde hij de schoone Oude.

COORDA, *Dutch and English Compared*, I.

210. The manners of these men, who spend the greater part of their lives in isolation, are marked by **little of superficial polish**.

211. There was **something of reality** about it, which attracted me most of all.

§ 47. After *something, anything, everything, little*, etc. we sometimes replace the adjective by *of* and a noun, especially when the adj. is qualified by an adverb, which before the noun is, of course, rendered by an adjective, as *something important — something of importance; something very important = something of great importance*.

§ 48. Note the following translations:

212. The old man would have desired *to stand first* (de eerste te zijn, nommer één te zijn) and have no rival in the love of his grand-child.

213. We have several boarders, among whom are *two Dutch and five English* (twee Hollanders en vijf Engelschen).

214. *You may try your worst* (gij kunt ons tegenwerken, zooveel gij maar wilt; gij kunt uw uiterste krachten inspannen om ons ongelukkig te maken).

215. You have always *done your best* (uw best gedaan).

216. *He made the best of his way home* (hij maakte zoo gauw mogelijk, dat hij thuis kwam).

217. It has been painted *a bright green* (helder groen).

PLACE OF THE ADJECTIVE.

218. Before this happy union of England and Scotland, there were many **long, cruel, and bloody wars** between the two nations.

219. I have heard Sir William Thornhill represented as one of the **most generous, yet whimsical men** in the country.

220. It was a **national as well as a religious feeling** that drew great multitudes to the shrine of Becket.

221. At the further end of the court was a **very large and even stately house**.

222. I was not a little affected by the sight of this **one kind old friend**.

223. Every one who happened to observe him thought that for **so confident and hot-tempered a man** he bore the blow remarkably well.

§ 49. As a rule attributive adjectives, even when there are two or more of them, are placed before the noun they qualify, also when the adjective is accompanied by adjuncts.

CXLV. Willem was het hoofd van een groote, maar ontmoedigde partij en (de) erfgenaam van gewichtige doch onbepaalde aanspraken, die de vrees opwekten van de oligarchie, (welke) toen oppermachtig (was) in de Vereenigde Nederlanden.

CXLVI. Dit aangename, maar voor het overige weinig belangrijke werk nam het grootste gedeelte van den morgen in beslag, zoodat er weinig tijd overbleef onzen goeden, getrouwen vriend een bezoek te brengen.

CXLVII. Het is een heerlijk land om in te wonen; er zijn vruchten van allerlei soort en tegen den laagst mogelijken prijs.

CXLVIII. Zijn groote, bruine, sprekende oogen waren op mij gevestigd, en 't was mij onmogelijk weerstand te bieden aan den indruk, dien ze op mij maakten.

224. **External heat and cold** had little influence on Scrooge.

225. The child was skating, practising in front of the house, and coming to the fire every few minutes to warm **her cold nose and ears**.

226. In his opinion there is no country like England; **an English breakfast, an English hearth, an English house**, are the best in their kind.

§ 50. One attributive adjective may serve to qualify two or more nouns, even when they differ in number. Emphasis sometimes requires the repetition of the adjective.

CXLIX. Vele kostbare boeken en schilderijen en een groot aantal zeldzame voorwerpen werden door den brand vernield.

CL. Hij is een zoo goed meester, een zoo goed vriend en een zoo goed man, als men (maar) kan verlangen.

227. On my return I saw that **the house so dear to me** had been sold.

228. We found our way to the coast by **paths inaccessible to horses**.

229. **A society sunk in ignorance, and ruled by mere physical force**, has (a) great reason to rejoice when a class of which the influence is intellectual and moral, rises to ascendancy.

230. In **a society altogether disorganized** they had no difficulty in finding greedy adventurers, who eagerly welcomed any chance of gaining riches.

231. One person is vanquished by a single blow, others only by **efforts successively repeated**.

232. Mankind may be divided and classified in many ways according to **the tests applied**.

233. **A wall ten feet thick and a ditch eighty feet wide** protected the besieged, who were, moreover, well provided with everything.

234. There was a time when to see Brown, the author of the latest, much admired novel, in the flesh, and actually walking in the Park with his umbrella and Mrs. Brown, was **an event remarkable and to the end of time to be perfectly well remembered**.

235. **A house large and comfortable** had been prepared for his reception.

236. The commander who had to conduct the defence under **circumstances so discouraging** was a young man twenty-five years old.

§ 51. The adjective — which in these cases can be easily replaced by a relative clause — is placed after the noun:

1. when it is accompanied by a prepositional adjunct (227—229);

2. when it is a participle, with or without adjuncts, which has retained much of its verbal character (compare *a book translated* with *a translated book*); see 229—232;

3. when there is an adverbial adjunct denoting measure (time, weight, length, etc.); see 233;

4. for the sake of emphasis, generally when there are two or more adjectives, or the adjective is qualified by adjuncts (234—236).

CLI. De door hem aanbevolen boeken werden altijd met **graagte** door de jongens gelezen; hij wist juist, wat met ieders **smaak** overeenkwam.

CLII. De heer N. wordt door velen voor de beste der (nu) levende dichters gehouden; ik kan mij dat evenwel niet **begrijpen**, gij wel?

CLIII. Met eene door snikken afgebroken stem las zij den brief voor, die hun de laatste berichten aangaande hun zoo **vroeg** gestorven zoon mededeelde.

CLIV. De ontvangen indruk was zoo sterk, dat wij eenige **oogenblikken** sprakeloos bleven; grooter triomf had de kunstenaar zich niet kunnen voorstellen.

CLV. Een breed en voor rijtuigen ingericht pad leidde over een der heuvels; in den winter was het evenwel onbegaanbaar door de veelvuldige en *plotseling opkomende* (sudden) **sneeuwstormen**.

CLVI. Een zestig voet hooge boom was omgewaaid en lag juist over ons pad. In zijnen val had hij een paar kleine in de nabijheid groeiende boompjes gebroken.

237. He had a certain skill in **things worldly**; but his wit in **things political** seemed to belong to an earlier generation, and to be incapable of receiving new impressions.

238. Such is the story of "Esmond", leaving with it, as does all Thackeray's work, a melancholy conviction of the vanity of all **things human**.

239. For many **years past** none of the pupils had been received within the parsonage, unless when received there as guests, which was of frequent occurrence.

240. All the **ladies present** praised her for the courage she had shown in that critical moment.

241. Lord Churchill was now sent as **ambassador extraordinary** to Versailles.

§ 52. The adjective is also placed after the noun:

1. in many titles, as *attorney-general*, *astronomer royal*, *ambassador extraordinary*, especially in compounds with *general* and *royal*;

2. with *things* not preceded by the definite article, as *things useful*, *things unutterable*, *things spiritual*;

3. when *present* means *aanwezig*; not when it refers to time, in which case it must be rendered by *tegenwoordig*, *deze*, as *the poor people present* (de aanwezige armen), *on the present occasion* (bij deze gelegenheid);

4. when *past* is rendered by *laatste*, as *for two years past* (in de laatste twee jaar); not when it means *vroeger*, as *his past behaviour*; *my past sins*; in the sense of *verleden* it sometimes precedes, sometimes follows the noun, as *in times past*;

5. very often in the case of *next* and *last*, as *Monday next*, *Sunday last*;

6. in many standing expressions: *he is of the blood royal* (van koninklijken bloede); *heir apparent*, *heir presumptive* ¹⁾

¹⁾ An *heir apparent* is one whose right to an estate is indefeasible if he survives the ancestor; an *heir presumptive* is one who, if the ancestor

(vermoedelijke erfgenaam); *the lords spiritual and temporal* (de bisschoppen en pairs, die in het Hoogerhuis zitting hebben); *knight-errant* (dolende ridder); *God Almighty* (in addressing God, we say Almighty God); *court-martial* (krijgsraad); *letters patent* (octrooi, patent); *the work proper* (het eigenlijke werk); *time immemorial* (onheuglijke tijden); *all means possible* (more emphatic than *all possible means*); *the best humour possible* (het best mogelijk humeur); *queen regnant* (regeerende koningin); *poet laureate* (hofdichter aan het Engelsche hof), etc.

CLVII. Op de best mogelijke manier hebt gij uw werk volbracht; gij kunt verzekerd zijn van de dankbaarheid der geheele bevolking.

CLVIII. Alle denkbare^a ongelukken¹ schijnen op zijn hoofd neer te komen; in de laatste jaren heeft hij geen dag van werkelijk geluk gekend.

CLIX. Gij kunt u onze verbazing niet voorstellen, toen in het midden van zijne toespraak de redenaar al de aanwezige dames verzocht even hare ooren te sluiten, daar hij iets moest zeggen, dat alleen voor mannen geschikt was.

SOME MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

242. When I had been there for three or four days, I began already to be proud of being a **Rugby** boy.

243. I should not like to be at sea in such foggy weather; only three days ago there was a fatal collision between the **Rotterdam** steamer and another boat.

244. The great ocean routes which have their starting-point at Southampton are the **Mediterranean**, the **West India**, the **Cape**, **East India**, **Australia** and **China** routes.

should die immediately, would be his heir, but whose right to the inheritance may be defeated by the birth of a nearer relative, or by some other contingency.

245. The interval between Clive's first and second administration has left on the fame of the **East India** Company a stain, not wholly effaced by many years of just and humane government.

246. The chairman of the directors was the great Mr. Brough, of the house of Brough and Hoff, **Turkey** Merchants.

247. He got a premium of four or five hundred pounds with each young man, whom he made to slave for ten hours a day, and whom in compensation he taught all the mysteries of the **Turkish** trade.

§ 53. Many proper names, especially names of places, have no corresponding adjective, but are used as such without any change of form. From names like *Venice*, *Athens*, *Sparta*, *Thebes*, etc. which are also names of states, are formed *Venetian*, *Athenian*, *Spartan*, *Theban*; we read of *Parisian sayings and doings*, but take the *Paris route*; a *Turkish merchant* is a Turk, or lives in Turkey, but a *Turkey merchant* trades to Turkey; we say *West India Company*, *East India Service*, but speak of *West Indian produce*, of *East Indian silks*, etc.

CLX. De Venetiaansche schepen waren over 't algemeen zeer klein in de 14^{de} eeuw; sommige waren slechts *tien ton groot* (of ten tons burden), terwijl *weinige grooter waren dan* (= overtroffen) honderd ton.

CLXI. In den tuin van het paleis stond een Grieksche tempel, die vreemd afstak bij de omringende gebouwen en gebouwtjes.

CLXII. Toen de Turken Griekenland bezetten, vluchtten de Grieksche patriotten en geleerden naar andere landen, onder andere naar Italië, en zochten daar een bestaan door hunne taal te onderwijzen.

CLXIII. De hoofdstad van het eiland St. Thomas is gebouwd aan een ruime baai; *daarom ook is zij uitgekozen* (hence its selection) als de hoofdmart voor Westindische voortbrengselen.

CLXIV. Niemand wordt in die bibliotheek toegelaten dan op aanbeveling van een Londensch predikant.

CLXV. Ik zal nooit onze Oxfordsche reis vergeten, en hoe wij, na lang rondgedwaald te hebben, eindelijk doornat en vermoeid de stad bereikten.

248. I often happened to be in the neighbourhood, and paid **an occasional visit** to the scene of my youthful joys and sorrows.

249. A visitor whom they both would have been **very glad** to welcome, had called in their absence.

250. If you give him any money, he is **sure** to come back; for he will think that you are afraid of him, and want him to keep your secret.

251. His nature was noble, though some people *had a mistaken impression to the contrary* (verkeerdelijk het tegendeel dachten).

252. *It was impossible for Tom* (Tom kon onmogelijk) to despise Mr. S. as he had despised his former teacher.

253. He always paid **undivided attention** to what even the meanest of his clients said to him, which went far towards giving him the high reputation he possessed.

254. Men were not **long** to remember that for a considerable time English politics had found their centre at York.

§ 54. Sometimes an adverb in Dutch is rendered by an adjective in English, especially when we make use of a verbal phrase, as *to pay attention (to), to take care (of)*.

CLXVI. *Blijf niet te lang weg* (to be long); ik zal gaarne op u wachten; maar om half vijf moet ik thuis zijn, reken daarop.

CLXVII. Men kan duidelijk zien, dat de brieven zijn geschreven *vooral met het oog op* (with a special regard to) de mogelijkheid, dat ze later in *den vorm van een boek* (book form) zullen worden uitgegeven.

CLXVIII. Hij zal zeker zijn uiterste krachten inspannen, als hij weet, dat er zooveel afhangt van den uitslag der onderneming.

CLXIX. Hoewel ik wist, dat er uitstekend voor het knaapje zou worden gezorgd, ging ik toch dikwijls naar de hoeve om mij persoonlijk daarvan te overtuigen.

CHAPTER IV.

NUMERALS.

255. We were **twenty** when we set out on our journey, and we were only **three** when we returned.

256. **Chapter Three** (= **Chapter the Third** = the third chapter) of Macaulay's History of England gives remarkable proof of the author's industry.

257. Can we remain undisturbed for a few minutes? I should like to say **a word or two** to you and your wife.

258. She started back **two or three** paces, and looked at him in consternation.

259. The **one** object of his life is to keep the labourers and their families in a state of ignorance and subjection.

260. His was the **one** figure that stood out bright against the darkness of the age.

§ 55. *Wij met ons twintigen vergezelden hem* is rendered by *we twenty accompanied him* or *there were twenty of us who accompanied him*; *ze zijn vijf in getal* is translated by *they are five* or *there are five of them*.

In Dutch we often use *een paar* instead of *eenige*, or when the number is not exactly two. The English equivalents are *a few*, *one or two*, *two or three*, *a (word) or two*; *a couple* is, however, also used.

One is often an adjective, meaning *eenig* (259—260).

Note the following expressions:

The rule of three (de regel van drieën).

To creep on all fours (op handen en voeten kruipen).

To be at sixes and sevens (in wanorde zijn).

The last but two (op twee na de laatste).

CLXX. Hoe groot ook de fouten van Godwin waren, hij was de eenige (*man*), die Engeland kon bevrijden van de heerschappij der vreemdelingen, die stroomden naar het hof van Eduard den Belijder.

CLXXI. Hij zal een paar dagen bij ons logeeren, voor hij naar Indië gaat. De reis is wel wat duur; maar nu hij toch zooveel moet uitgeven, komt het op een paar honderd gulden niet aan.

CLXXII. Wij werden onderweg aangevallen door een paar honderd vijanden, en daar wij slechts met ons veertigen waren, kostte het ons moeite den aanval af te slaan; maar het gelukte ons toch na twee uur vechtens.

§ 56. Note the rendering of the following expressions containing the Dutch *eerst*:

261. The people are very superstitious here; so the greatest aversion is felt *to be the first* (om het eerst) to enter a new building.

262. *He has been the first to read the book* (hij heeft het boek het eerst gelezen) and point out the beauties in it.

263. He promised himself that he would fish in the river *the first thing to-morrow morning* (het den volgenden morgen zijn allereerste werk zou zijn enz.)

264. *From the first* (van het eerste oogenblik af) I knew that the impression I had made on him was not a favourable one.

265. He will be *the very first* (de allereerste) to acknowledge all this.

erst) I will write to Mr. N., to whom my
applied for legal advice.

267. Let us see; what have we to do this m
and foremost (in de allereerste plaats), we have
accounts.

268. When these Acts have done their work,
not till then (en ook dan eerst), will the emancipa
people fairly begin.

§ 57. In some cases the Dutch translation does n
an ordinal numeral.

269. *She is second to none* (zij doet voor nieman
in the fulfilment of her duties.

270. *On second thoughts* (bij nader nadenken) I did
prove of her choice at all.

271. *He stands first in my esteem* (ik acht hem het
van allen).

CHAPTER V.

PLACE OF THE SUBJECT.

272. Never *had England seemed* so strong and so peace
as when after Eadwig's death Eadgar was left in possession
of the throne.

273. Never, never *will I desert* the post of duty, as long
s there is any life in me.

274. I am amazed at all this, nor *can I understand* what
means.

275. Everybody said that she had been shamefully treated
him, nor *did his friends try* to excuse him.

276. No sooner *had we discovered* where the miser had

dden his gold, than we left the house after carefully restoring everything to its place.

277. He is very ill yet; scarcely *does he pay* any attention to what is said to him.

278. Hardly *were these words* out of my mouth, when the boy left the room, and I have never seen him afterwards.

279. Nowhere *are lizards, crocodiles and serpents* larger and more numerous than in South America.

280. In no country *has the enmity of race been carried* further than in England. In no country *has that enmity been* more completely *effaced*.

281. "O God!" he cried in the bitterness of his heart. Not only *have I seen* the righteous man forsaken, but his children begging bread."

282. Little *did I think* when I took him in my arms for the first time that we should have cause to curse the hour of his birth.

283. Seldom *did he speak* of it, and when he did, he always tried to find excuses for his first-born.

284. I don't care a straw for all this, no more *does my wife*. Had not you better go to other persons to talk about it?

285. Not until we have thoroughly sifted the matter, *can we know* which of you is to blame.

286. "You like the picture, Sir," he said. "So *do I*; I have painted it."

§ 58. The subject is placed after the first auxiliary — in the present and imperfect tenses *to do* is used, except with *to have*, *to be*, *can*, *may*, etc. — when one of the adverbial adjuncts *never* (*never before*, *never after*, etc.), *nor*, *neither*, *no sooner*, *scarcely*, *hardly*, *nowhere* (*in no country*, etc.), *not only*, *little*, *seldom*, *no more*, *not until*, all of which have a negative meaning, and *so* (look), is placed at the head of the sentence. See, however, § 20, and the preceding sentences.

In 285 *not* belongs to the principal clause, causing inversion of the subject, *until* belongs to the subordinate clause.

CLXXIII. Plotseling was zij verdwenen, nadan van de straat was omgeslagen. Nooit te voren *eene voorstelling van kunnen maken* (to realize), lijk een dergelijk verdwijnen wordt gemaakt door heid van deze groote wereldstad.

CLXXIV. Niet zoodra had de boot den oever de ongelukkige schipbreukelingen sprongen aan land knielende kusten zij de aarde en dankten God met vreugde.

CLXXV. Te Eastbourne is er geene kamer te k *geld of goede woorden* (love or money). Nooit te vor op) deze opkomende badplaats zoo vol geweest.

CLXXVI. Ten tijde dat de Romeinen in Engela den, gebruikten de Britten een ruw soort schild; o het niet, dat de Saksen of Denen eenig ander *verdr wapen* (defence) hadden dan het schild en den helm, t voor de verovering.

CLXXVII. Nauwelijks had Jacobus I den Engelsche beklommen, toen de laatste O'Donnell en O'Neill, die de van onafhankelijke vorsten hadden bekleed, hem de kwamen kussen te Whitehall.

CLXXVIII. In de Transatlantische koloniën was g vraag naar *arbeidskrachten* (labour), en in deze vraag gedeeltelijk voorzien door een stelsel van werven en *goudig oplichten* (to kidnap) in de voornaamste Engelsche havens. Nergens werd het stelsel meer algemeen in toep sing gebracht dan in Bristol.

CLXXIX. Niet alleen had hij zich vergrepen aan het g van zijnen meester; maar hij had den jongen, die het gema had, door bedreigingen geheimhouding doen zweren.

CLXXX. Weinig dacht ik, toen wij naar deze plaats m den, dat wij zulke genoegelijke en gelukkige dagen met elz zouden doorbrenge.

CLXXXI. Dikwijls beproefde hij den armen man een belangstelling voor zijn werk in te boezemen; maar zeld gelukte het hem.

CLXXXII. „Ik zal steeds mijn best doen u te toonen, dat we gaven niet aan een onwaardige zijn verkwist.” „Ik ook,” ei mijn makker.

287. *Had my skates failed* for one instant, *had I tripped* on a stick, or *had my foot been caught* in a fissure of the ice, the story I am now telling would never have been written.

288. *Were the story*, as now told by this fellow, *true*, he ought certainly to die, so as to make speedy atonement for his wickedness.

289. *Should all this be taken* into consideration, our ministers would not have a moment's rest.

290. *Could the England of 1685 be*, by some magical process, *set* before our eyes, we should not know one landscape in a hundred.

291. *Did an elderly gentleman essay* to stop the progress of the ball, it rolled between his legs, or slipped between his fingers. *Did a slim gentleman try* to catch it, it struck him on the nose. *Was it thrown* straight up to the wicket, *it had* reached it before the ball.

§ 59. Instead of *if* followed by a subject and the past tense of a verb, we often use a construction without *if*. In this case the subject is placed after the past tense of the auxiliary verb. When there is no auxiliary in Dutch, *should*, *were to*, or sometimes *did*, is used.

CLXXXIII. Was het *Oeralisch gebergte* (Ural Mountains) hoog genoeg om de koude winden van Azië te onderscheppen, dan zou Rusland een warmer klimaat genieten.

CLXXXIV. Ik zou zijn plotselingen dood aan vergif hebben toegeschreven, *had ik niet geweten* (to be aware), dat hij geene gelegenheid had gehad het ongemerkt te krijgen.

CLXXXV. Was Jacobus, evenals Hendrik IV, als Maurits

van Nassau, als Gustaaf Adolf, een dapper, werkzaam en politiek heerscher geweest, had hij zich geplaast aan het hoofd van de Protestanten van Europa, had hij groote overwinningen behaald op Tilly en Spinola, had hij Westminster versien, *by hetgeen hij buitgemaakt had in* (the spoils of) Beiersche kerktuers en Vlaamsche kathedralen, had hij Oostenrijksche en Kastiliaansche banieren opgehangen in de St. Paulskerk, had hij zich na groote *wapenfeiten* (achievement) aan het oog gezien (to find) van 50.000 man, dapper, *aan goede krijgsgeveind* (well disciplined) en *met toewijding* aan zijn vaderland *gehecht* (to devote), dan zou het Engelsche Parlement spijtelijk niets meer dan een naam zijn geweest.

CLXXXVI. Verdeelde ik dit geld onder de armen van de stad, wat zou dan ieder van hen krijgen?

292. On this rich plain grazed herds of goats and *but I saw no sheep.*

293. To the forgetfulness of the tomb *must we all at last.*

294. She seemed to be enclosed in a brown bag, *which emerged her hands and feet.*

295. He has that singular simplicity of character, *which he derives from his Roman descent upon the male side, in which will be found the key to many of his actions, good and bad.*

296. What secrets they know! Into what mystic chambers *do they not enter!*

297. With this man's knavery *was strangely mingled eccentric vanity, which resembled madness.*

298. The room was long and narrow, and at the far end *was a large sofa, on which was seated my father with his injured leg.*

299. In this room *had my father assembled a great number of curious objects.*

§ 60. When an adverbial adjunct of some length, especially prepositional adjunct, opens the sentence, the subject is generally placed after the verb, at least when it is qualified by attributive adjuncts, or when it is a compound subject. The verb must be intransitive or passive, or one of the verbs *can*, *may*, *must*, etc.; when it is transitive, and inversion takes place, an auxiliary must precede the subject, which in this case must not be of too great length.

CLXXXVII. In het jaar 1748 stierf een van de machtigste en nieuwe *beheerschers* (master) van Indië, de groote Nizam of Mulk, onderkoning van Decan.

CLXXXVIII. Rijke boekerijen bestonden te Canterbury, in het klooster *te* (of) Wearmouth, en vooral te York, waarin bijna alle Grieksche en Latijnsche schrijvers gevonden werden.

CLXXXIX. In het jaar 1002 richtten de Engelschen een algemeen bloedbad onder de Denen aan. Onder anderen werd vermoord eene zuster van den koning van Noorwegen met haar man en kinderen.

CXC. Te Enfield, ter nauwernood buiten het gezicht van den rook der hoofdstad, was eene streek van vijf en twintig mijl in omtrek, die slechts drie huizen en bijna geene *omsloten* (enclosed) velden bevatte.

CXCI. Onder dezen steen ligt begraven een der grootste mannen, die ons land heeft voortgebracht, een man, die steeds het algemeen belang boven het zijne stelde.

CXCII. *Telkens en telkens weer* (time after time) hebben de panjaarden beproefd Gibraltar, den sleutel der Middellandsche zee, te herwinnen, maar altijd tevergeefs en dikwijls met nitzaglijk verlies voor den vijand.

300. *May you be happy in the life you have chosen. God forbid that I should utter any other wish.*

301. There was not a single one among all these thousands who cried: "Long live the King!"

302. On his deathbed the King said to his son: "*Be thou a father to thy people.*"

§ 61. Inversion of the subject takes place in sentences expressing a wish, and opening with *may* or with an *adverb*.

A verb in the *imperative* mood is sometimes accompanied by a subject, which, if it is a pronoun, follows the verb.

CXCIII. Wees maar niet (use a subject) te trotsch, mijn jongen. Wie weet, hoe spoedig gij berouw hebt over uwe woorden.

CXCIV. Lang leve de Koningin! Moge zij een zegen worden voor haar volk.

303. How often during the next week or so *did we wish* that we could as well bear the heat of the desert as our Arab guides.

304. Especially *was the influence of the Act* (wet) *beneficial* in its effect upon the employment of young women in the dressmaking trade.

305. Often *have I seen* a man in that country kill a hog on the floor of his house, cut it up, roast it, and then offer the meat to his guests.

306. So steadily *did William refuse* to appoint successors to the prelates whom death removed that at the close of his reign one archbishopric, four bishoprics, and eleven abbeys were found to be without pastors.

307. Surely, this was Rip's native village, which he had left but the day before. There *stood the Kaatskill mountains* — there *ran the silver Hudson* at a distance — there *was every hill and dale* precisely as it had always been.

308. Frequently *were seen gardens*, bright with flowers.

§ 62. When, for the sake of emphasis, an adverb is placed at the beginning of a sentence, the subject — rarely when it is a pronoun — is put after the verb or after the first

auxiliary verb; when the verb is transitive, an auxiliary is required, except with *may*, *can*, *must*, etc.

If the verb is in the passive voice, the subject follows the past participle when it is qualified by an attributive adjunct of some length, or by an adjective clause.

CXCV. Zweden werd overgehaald zich te vereenigen met Engeland en de Staten. Zoo werd die coalitie gevormd, die bekend is als de Triple Alliantie.

CXCVI. Langzamerhand won mijn vriend het vertrouwen van zijnen patroon, en na verloop van zes jaar werd hij in compagnieschap opgenomen.

CXCVII. Hier staat het huis, waar wij onze kinderjaren doorbrachten. Hier is de tuin, waarin wij zoo menigmaal samen hebben gespeeld, en daar is het prieeltje, dat ons in den zomer schaduw verleende.

CXCVIII. Hoe dikwijls heeft uw vader mij beloofd iets voor mij te zullen doen, zoodra hij er toe in de gelegenheid was. Nu is de gelegenheid *daar* (come), en waar blijft nu zijne hulp?

309. As the rector or vicar is often something of a banker or a doctor, so, also, *is he* something of a lawyer and general agent as well.

310. As *Boards of Guardians* ¹⁾ have deprived the *vestries* ²⁾ of their authority, so now *is there* an **organized movement** to divest the County Magistrates of most or all of the prerogatives they prize.

311. As a man lives, so *shall he die*; as the tree falls, so *shall it lie*.

¹⁾ *Board of Guardians* = armbestuur.

²⁾ The English word *vestry* is not equivalent to our *kerkeraad*. The duties of some vestries include the repair of churches, care of highways, the appointment of certain officers, etc.

§ 63. The same construction as in the preceding paragraph is often found after *so*, the correlative of *as*.

CXCIX. Evenals men in een uur van de drukste stad in het stilste dorp kan zijn, zoo zijn er dikwijls slechts weinige minuten tusschen tijden van grootè ontroering en vreedzame kalmte.

CC. Zooals wij moeten werken van den vroegen morgen tot den laten avond, zoo zagen onze ouders zich genoodzaakt door harden arbeid hun brood te verdienen.

CCI. Evenals sommige onderwijzers verkeerdelijk denken, dat zij door toegevendheid de liefde hunner leerlingen zullen winnen, zoo heb ik sommige predikanten naar populariteit zien streven door mee te doen aan de spelen hunner gemeenteleden.

312. For some time we had been awaiting the arrival of the coach. Suddenly the loud notes of a key-bugle broke the monotonous stillness of the street; in *came the coach*, rattling over the uneven pavement. Down *got the outsides*¹⁾, up *went the windows* in all directions; out *came the waiters*, up *started the ostlers and the postboys* as if they had been electrified — unstrapping, and unchaining, and unbuckling, and dragging willing horses out, and forcing reluctant horses in, and making a most exhilarating bustle. "Lady inside, here," said the guard. "Please to alight, Ma'am," said the waiter. "Private sitting-room?" interrogated the lady. "Certainly, Ma'am," responded the chambermaid. "Nothing but these trunks, Ma'am?" inquired the guard. "Nothing more," replied the lady. Up *got the outsides* again, and the guard, and the coachman; off *came the cloths* (paardedek) with a jerk. "All right" was the cry, and away *they went*.

¹⁾ *Outsides* are outside passengers, as distinguished from those who are inside.

§ 64. When for the sake of emphasis an adverbial adjunct closely connected with the verb is placed at the beginning of a sentence, the subject — especially when it is a noun — often follows the verb.

CCII. Om en om gingen de raderen, en naar boven gingen de mannen, verlicht door het flauwe schijnsel van een kaarsje, dat een hunner voor op zijn pet droeg.

CCIII. „Kom binnen,” riep ik. En binnen kwam een klein meisje, nog geen vijf jaar oud.

313. I suppose that never since the world began, there *lived quite so poor a judge of character* as my mother.

314. The farmers are intent upon getting in the hay before there *comes the break in the weather* which is portended by ugly barometrical signs.

315. From the total of this rental there *has*, before it reaches the ducal coffers, *been deducted the expenditure upon repairs and permanent improvements*.

316. On his face there *are visible those lines* of quiet resolution which proclaim that, if fighting is necessary, fight he will.

§ 65. *There* often precedes the verb, especially when an adverbial adjunct opens the sentence. In that case the subject is placed after the verb.

CCIV. Binnen weinige maanden was er niets meer over van al de pracht en luister, die eens de oogen van honderduizenden had verblind.

CCV. In eenen hoek van de kamer lag een arm knaapje op een paar bossen stroo; de ouders hoorden met de grootste onverschilligheid naar zijn zuchten en kreunen.

CCVI. In de wijze, waarop hij tot mij sprak, was iets onverschilligs, dat hij ternauwernood voor mij trachtte te verbergen.

317. To Londoners everything seems to have happened but yesterday, so engaged *is every man* in his individual speculations, studies, struggles; so selfish *does our life* make us.

318. The old house seemed a desert without her; so useful and pleasant *had my sister* made herself there.

319. If the parish parson can help to create such a sympathy, happy *is he*, and well *will it be* for the neighbourhood.

320. Happy *is he* whose friends were born before him.

321. How different *will be the scene* that I have now to tell from that which has just been told.

§ 66. When a predicative adjective is found at the head of a sentence, the subject is often placed after the verb, sometimes after the first auxiliary; the postposition of the subject is necessary when it is qualified by an attributive clause.

CCVII. Groot moet zijne verbazing zijn geweest en groot ook zijne teleurstelling, toen hij bevond, dat zijn zoon het gezelschap van anderen verkoos boven het zijne.

CCVIII. Zoo zwak en uitgeput was ik, dat ik zonder te denken deed, wat mij gelast werd.

CCIX. Onuitsprekelijk was de verbazing van het gezelschap, toen zij bij hunne terugkomst zagen, dat hun *zoogenaamde* (so-called) vriend verdwenen was.

CCX. *Talrijk* (many) waren de bittere verwijtingen over mijne lichtgeloovigheid, die mij naar het hoofd werden geslingerd.

322. Many timid remonstrances *had she uttered* to George in behalf of her brother.

323. This house *did he build* (he built) some years ago before unlucky speculations had diminished his fortune.

§ 67. When the object is placed at the beginning of a sentence, the subject generally precedes the verb, but some-

nes it is put after the first auxiliary, or one of the verbs *ay, can, etc.*

CCXI. Één ding heb ik altijd trachten te bewaren, zelfs in de dagen van mijn grootste ellende, en dat eene is een zuiver geweten.

CCXII. Veel ellende heb ik zien voortkomen uit het verlangen om met dezulken om te gaan, die in maatschappelijke positie boven ons verheven zijn.

324. "So long as I have lived," wrote **Alfred** in later days, "I have striven to live worthily."

325. "Come on, Charles!" shouted **the boys**. "I can't," cried I piteously. "I have lost my shoes in the bog."

326. "What's to be done?" **the captain said**, in a low voice, more as if he was asking the question of himself than of us.

327. "No," **he said** to me in a faltering voice. "No, after this I can never again look you in the face."

328. "Tell my servant to bring me a light for my cigar," said **Mr. O.** to one of the men.

329. "Oh no!" said **the boy** who had paid the least attention, "we cannot follow you, sir."

§ 68. When a sentence containing a verb of *saying, replying, etc.* is placed between two parts of a quotation or after it, the subject precedes or follows the verb. It nearly always precedes the verb when the latter is accompanied by an object, and follows when it is qualified by an attributive clause.

CCXIII. "Hoe heet gij, *goede vrouw* (mother)?" vroeg hij het oudje. "En hoe komt het, dat gij u zoo vroeg in den morgen op weg bevindt?"

CCXIV. "Geef dezen man een pak kleeven," zei Napoleon, toen wendende tot eenen zeeofficier, die hem vergezelde, "en

"Did you ever leave him in the room alone?" —
 "n't **say**, Ma'am, perhaps I did."

"But why do you consent to work so long for so
 money?" — "Why, don't you **know**? I **told** you some
 ago." — "No, I **forget**."

He never learned to draw, perhaps never could have
 ed.

Why should there be a delay? Not that I **object**,
 not at all. I only **ask**.

"I will go and **tell** your father." — "*Please, don't* (doe
 is je blieft niet), it will only make him angry."

Now is our time, while nobody is looking. When
 we are round that corner, we are safe.

That is what people serving the Queen have to expect;
 is the way in which they are rewarded.

They say that we are going to the dogs. **That**, of
 e, **is not** how the grave and reverend signiors of science
 ne matter, but it is what their arguments come to.

War very soon broke out again between the impetu-
 and and his domineering stepmother. It was not that he
 very bad, and she, perhaps, more stern than other ladies,
 e two *could not agree* (konden **het** niet met elkaar vinden).

The cynics who had said that she would console her-
 had been obliged to own that their worldly wisdom *had*
 at *fault* (**het** mis had gehad).

9. The Dutch *het*, *er van*, *er over*, etc., is not used
 English translation:

when it anticipates the object which immediately follows
 verb in the form of a dependent clause or an infinitive
 331);

often after the verbs *to try*, *to mind*, *to mean*, *to know*,
suade, *to win*, *to say*, *to learn*, *to ask*, *to tell* when it is
 to complete the sentence (332—341); [note that in *to get*
over, etc.) the Dutch *er uit*, *er ~* is rendered by an
 b (334)];

4. after adverbs of time such as *ichen*, *now*, *then*, etc. of the forms of the verb *to be*: *ichen is your birthday!* *be the hour of revenge* 342);

5. in the expression *dat is het* followed by a relative (343, 344);

6. in a few expressions, as *to agree* (het eens warden), *to be at fault* (het mis hebben), *to manage* (het aanleggen, het redden), *to hold out* (het uithouden), *to pretend*, *to make believe* (het doen voorkomen).

CCXVII. Wie had kunnen denken, dat ik *het* zou (to) live hem gelukkig en tevreden te zien en geallen, die hem kennen.

CCXVIII. Daar klimt hij alweer over den muur van tuyn om mijne appels te stelen. Geef mij mijn sto (het) hem wel *afleeren* (teach).

CCXIX. Zal het geld zoo verdeeld worden, da niet geregeld naar de kerk gaan, evenveel krijgen, a (het) wel doen?

CCXX. Allen sprongen op, toen zij het luide hoorden. De eenige, die er niet om scheen te g mijn vader, die bij de kachel bleef zitten.

CCXXI. „Zal het nog lang duren, voor hij van terugkomt?“ „Ik kan het niet zeggen; hij heeft or vier weken geschreven.“

CCXXII. Vraag het maar aan mijne zuster; zij waar moeder de appels en peren *heeft* (to keep).

CCXXIII. Hij deed het voorkomen, dat hij hem maar wij wisten wel beter en lieten ons niet zoo beetnemen.

CCXXIV. Dat hij zich nooit iets ontzegt, terwijl ouders, die alles voor hem over hebben, zoo zuinig leven, dat is het, wat ik niet kan verdragen.

347. He took **it** into his head to get down to L. and spend a fortnight there.

348. The old man was very polite, and being with men of letters, he thought **it** proper to make his conversation entirely literary.

349. The good and evil which he has **it** in his power to effect, cause him to be much looked up to in that part of the country.

350. I will leave this country, and it will be for your good as well as mine. When I have made a fortune, I will come and fetch you, and you shall be a princess after all. I know I have got **it** in me to do something in the world.

351. We have always thought **it** strange that while the history of the Spanish empire in America is familiarly known to all the nations of Europe, the great actions of our countrymen in the East should even among ourselves excite little interest.

352. I hardly know what I should feel **it** my duty to do in such a position myself.

353. This was a question which in very truth I found **it** hard to answer.

354. Don't you think **it** well you should know something of his life during these five years?

355. I don't **think fit** to pay much attention to what servants say of us.

356. Mary, Queen of Scotland, having been urged by her council to a second marriage, **thought proper** to apply to Elizabeth.

357. I *take it* (houd het er voor) he does not wish to have it known that he has had a hand in it.

358. Have not you often heard **it** said that he would not do it.

§ 70. When the objective infinitive or clause is separated from the governing verb by an adverbial adjunct or predicative adjective, the Dutch *het* is rendered in the English trans-

lation. Even in this case it is sometimes omitted, especially before a predicative adjective (355, 356).

I take it = ik houd het er voor, mij dunkt.

Compare *I have heard it said that*, etc. with *ik heb hooren zeggen, dat etc.*

CCXXV. Ik liep zoo vlug weg, omdat ik er nog bij tijds aan *dacht* (to remember), dat gij een uitstekend bokser zijt; ik vond het dus maar het best, geen tijd te verliezen.

CCXXVI. Mij dunkt, gij zult mijn gedrag goedkeuren, nu gij weet, hoe de zaak zich heeft toegedragen; ik vond het gepast u daarvan mededeeling te doen.

CCXXVII. *De ouden* (= de ouden) voelden, (dat) het (in) hun belang (was) deze wetten te handhaven, en *de jongeren* (= de jongen) achtten het hunnen roem ze te gehoorzamen.

CCXXVIII. Nu heeft hij *duidelijk doen blijken* (= het duidelijk gemaakt), dat hij niet in 't minst is te vertrouwen, en dat het het beste is hem aan zijn lot over te laten.

CCXXIX. *Ik zag, dat het onmogelijk was* (= ik vond het onmogelijk) hem naar mij te doen luisteren, voordat hij eenigszins van den schrik was bekomen.

359. He looked us up at Oxford, and, falling in with many Etonians there, had such a gay and uproarious time of it, that he was easily persuaded to repeat his visit.

360. It is not cold at all, and how clear is the sky! I suppose we shall have a beautiful day of it.

361. Let us get up a pic-nic and make a day of it out in the country.

362. I never went home. Is it a wonder, then, that I hated Christmas, and that at our breaking-up party I got quarrelsome and cross, and gave offence to those young gentlemen who would tell me of the jolly time they meant to have of it this Christmas?

§ 71. In familiar style *of it* is found after nouns denoting me, as *day, week, time*, in connection with the verbs *to have* and *to make*. I mean to have a good time of it, *i. e.* ¹⁾ the me that is allowed me.

CCXXX. Wij zullen een gezelligen tijd hebben, als wij amen thuis zijn.

CCXXXI. Ik geloof, dat wij een heerlijk dagje zullen hebben; an en Karel komen ook en zullen heel wat te vertellen hebben an wat ze op reis hebben gezien.

CCXXXII. Terwijl jullie *het goed hadden* (= een goeden tijd adden), moesten wij in de grootste koude langs bijna onbeaanbare wegen den vijand achtervolgen.

CCXXXIII. Ten laatste kan ik u het gelukkige nieuws van et volkomen herstel mijner zuster melden. Wij hebben een roevigen tijd gehad; maar alles is nu weer vergeten.

§ 72. Note the use of *it* in the following sentences:

363. I cannot afford to have a pauper daughter-in-law, *nd there is an end of it* (daar is 't mee uit).

364. *There is, of course, nothing for it but to submit to them.* er blijft natuurlijk alleen over ons aan hen te onderwerpen; er is niets aan te doen dan enz.).

365. *It follows* (hieruit volgt) that in towns like Manchester and Leeds the working classes are a much more visible power aan in London.

366. One lofty mountain, lifting its peak high above the lounds, *seemed to lord it over* (te beheerschen) the surrounding ountry.

¹⁾ Note the following abbreviations: *i. e.* (Lat. *id est*), read *that is*; *g.* (Lat. *exempli gratia*) read *for example* or *for instance*; *viz.* (Lat. *delicet* — the *z* is here used for the character 3, anciently an abbreviation for terminations; compare *oz* for *ounce, ounces* —), read *namely*; (Lat. *confer*), read *compare*.

367. The little child *lords it* (*speelt den baas*) over the inmates of the house. 373.

368. We have no objection to your accompanying us, can you bear the fatigue of the journey we are going to undertake? For we shall have to *rough it* (*met groote heden worstelen, een ruw leven leiden*). 374.

369. The two boys had been fighting for about five minutes. Not a word was spoken by any of the boys standing by. "Go it (doe maar; toe), Jack;" "Go it, Bob," were the sounds heard. 375.

370. My impression certainly was that he would be himself very little more about us; but I have much pleasure in admitting that *therein* I did him an injustice. 376.

371. We had some conversation together, and in the *thereof* it transpired that B. had come over to pay a visit to his relations. 377.

372. We had a pleasant chat and a quiet game of billiards till about eleven o'clock, whereupon we all wished one another a good night. 378.

373. Though *er van, hierover, daarvoor*, etc., are generally used by a proposition and a pronoun, we may occasionally use *shareuf, herein*, etc. 379.

374. *Wij pasten er op* (= we waren zorgvuldig te nemen) te nemen, uit vrees dat het glas, daarin bestond, zou breken. 380.

375. Het zijn aardige huisjes met een tuintje er voor. De bewoners eenige bloemen hebben geplaatst. 381.

376. Hij vroeg mij, of ik eerlijk was; waarop ik hem een woord te antwoorden. Want hij kon niet anders kunnen aannemen bij iemand, die wist dat ik niet wantrouwen tegen mij koestert. 382.

377. Het is niet mogelijk om te weten wat de bestemming van een bestemming is. 383.

373. I recommend you to restrict your requirements if possible to the limits of a travelling-bag, which, when necessary, you can wield unaided, and **take with you** into the railway-carriage.

374. The knowledge that I was far from any human dwelling, **brought with it** a feeling of entire hopelessness.

375. We **took with us** a third friend, a dramatist of repute and the proprietor of a theatre.

376. The south wind **brought rain with it**, and with shouts of joy the first drops were welcomed. For four long months we had not seen a cloud in the sky.

377. He prided himself on the reputation she **brought** from school of being one of the quickest learners there; of being clever, persevering, and industrious; ambitious to be the first in whatever she undertook to do.

§ 74. *Mee, mede* in expressions like *kom mee, ga mee, meemen, meebrengen* stands for *met mij, met hem*, etc., and is rendered by *with me, with him*, etc.; after *to bring* it is often left untranslated.

CCXXXVII. Den volgenden keer zal ik het boek meebrengen; ik heb het bijna uit.

CCXXXVIII. Als gij niet meegaat, blijf ik ook thuis; het schijnt mij volstrekt niet aangenaam toe met hem alleen zulk een verre wandeling te doen.

CCXXXIX. De landverhuizers namen natuurlijk de taal, gewoonten en gebruiken van hun geboorteland mede en behielden die in het vreemde land, daar ze een afzonderlijke kolonie vormden.

§ 75. Note the following translations:

There was no room for *poor (little) me* (mij arme).

Come along with us, *there is a good fellow* (dan ben je een beste vent).

P. ROORDA, *Dutch and English Compared*, I. 2nd edition.

6

Don't cry; *that's a good girl* (je bent een beste meid).

He loves his own self best (hij houdt het meest van zijn eigen ik).

He was almost like his own self again (hij was bijna weer als gewoonlijk; hij was bijna weer de oude).

In the year 1865 Rome was still in a great measure *its old self* (zooals het vroeger was).

"You have had your dinner, I suppose?" This was said by *him of the bald head* (den man met het kale hoofd).

You will *be the death of me* (mijn dood zijn; mij den dood aandoen), you two, with your perpetual quarrelling.

I could not, *for the life of me* (met den besten wil ter wereld), understand what the fellow meant.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

378. He made himself bitter reproaches now that it was too late. **At best** he had been but a haughty egotist not to ask his father for support.

379. **All through life** he has acted from the purest motives.

380. "When may we hope that he will be well again, and can resume his duties?" "In a month **at most**," was the doctor's answer.

381. Orderly **in business**, careless **in appearance**, sparing **in diet**, never resting or giving his servants rest, such was the man who was now placed at the head of the greatest commercial house in the country.

§ 76. The possessive pronoun is not used:

- a. in some attributive and adverbial adjuncts, as *at most*, *at (one's) ease*, etc.;
- b. often when the context makes the pronoun unnecessary.

CCXL. Toen Corona (haar) huis bereikte, ging zij naar haar eigen klein boudoir, met het plan daar een uur te blijven,

indien zij dat doen kon zonder gestoord te worden. Zij was lecht op haar gemak; want zij vreesde den toorn van haren ader.

CCXLI. De jonge man nam zijne plaats in het gezelschap met die kalmte en vroolijkheid, die hem nooit in (zijn) leven ebben verlaten, en die hem op zijn gemak hebben gezet, veral waar het lot hem geleid heeft.

CCXLII. Zij is zulk een goed wezentje, als (er maar één) an zijn. Zij is nooit uit haar humeur, hoewel ik mij verbeeld, at hare moeder het soms zeer op de proef stelt.

382. As soon as he had regained **his** feet, he sprang irectly towards me. But I saw him come, and knocked him own again with one well-directed blow.

383. "He never sits down," said one who observed him losely; "he is always on **his** legs from morning till night."

384. I thought you must have chambers in *the Albany* ¹⁾, nd lots of horses to ride, and a valet, and a groom, and a ab **at the very least**.

§ 77. The definite article in Dutch is rendered by the possessive pronoun in English before names of things more immediately belonging to the possessor, when the latter is the subject of an active sentence.

The Dutch possessive corresponds to the definite article in English in expressions like *op zijn allerminst* (at the very least), etc.

¹⁾ *The Albany* is, although not intended for such by the owners or occupiers, a very convenient thoroughfare for those who have the audacity so to use it, from Burlington-gardens to Piccadilly. It is a collection of queer houses, let as chambers. At present it has but little ignificance, but when George IV. was old, and when Queen Victoria was young, the 'Bachelor of the Albany' — for the chambers were then occupied by fashionable young men — was a recognized variety of 'the man about town' (bon vivant).

The old houses also formed a favourite resort of the wits and beaux the time (Dickens's Dictionary of London).

CCXLIII. Ik moest al mijne krachten inspannen en trachten te vergeten, wat op zijn best slechts een dwaze droom was geweest.

CCXLIV. Ik zal je spoedig weer op de been brengen, mijn beste man. Nog een dag of wat, en ge kunt weer door de kamer loopen.

§ 78. Note the following differences between Dutch and English usage:

385. Our old gardener has the keys of the castle **in his keeping**, and I really do not know how I shall get them **in my possession**.

386. Suddenly he **changed his position**, and again looked at his father, whose face, however, was as inscrutable as ever.

387. If you want to **change your dress**, you had better make haste; for the old man does not like to have to wait for his dinner.

388. She did not really suspect the visitor, who was one too ingenuous **in his nature** to preconcert so subtle and wicked a scheme.

389. I was supposed to be strong enough to hold out against *the two of them* (hun beiden), and really they could not get into the room.

390. Sir Thomas having received his instructions, told Henry that he feared, if he carried such a message to so violent a man as Francis, it might **cost him his head**.

391. That neglected cold, my friend, nearly **cost you your life**.

392. Yes, I have an excellent position now, and nothing to complain of; but that is *my good fortune rather than my merit* (meer geluk dan wijsheid).

393. **We three** can easily manage to hoist the sail.

394. **Yours** is a life more exposed to danger even than mine.

395. Let children play and sing and dance, and make them as happy as you possibly can. **Theirs** is the time of life for happiness.

396. **Mine** is the fault, and **mine** should be the punishment.

397. **Ours** will be the victory if only in this trying hour you do not flinch from your duty.

§ 79. The possessive pronoun used substantively may, for the sake of emphasis, be placed at the head of the sentence when in Dutch we have a possessive adjective or a personal pronoun in the dative (the dative relation is often expressed by *aan* or *voor*).

CCXLV. Wel is uw lot zeer vreemd. Het zal de verbazing opwekken van allen, die er van hooren.

CCXLVI. Onze kennismaking is slechts kort geweest; maar hoe groot is de vriendschap, die in dien korten tijd tusschen ons is ontstaan.

CCXLVII. Aan u de taak hem mededeeling te doen van wat in onze laatste bijeenkomst ten opzichte van hem en de zijnen besloten is.

CCXLVIII. Wel hebben ze nu met groote moeilijkheden te worstelen; maar hun zal toch ten slotte de zege zijn.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

398. Is not **this** the lady whom we saw at the jeweller's yesterday, and who, after first pretending not to see you, at length acknowledged your presence?

399. A Turk is a saint to such a fellow as **this**.

400. Get away **from this**, will you? If ever you come here again, I'll show you that all the strength has not yet gone out my arms.

401. Let us go now, and take a drive about the town; the streets must be crowded **by this**, and soon they will be too crowded.

402. I should have told you so **before this**; but the whole of yesterday I could not find an opportunity to speak a few words to you in private.

403. Through the passes of the Caucasus **those** known as the *Celts* ¹⁾ first migrated to the region north of the Black Sea.

404. Then came the Teutons. First, perhaps, came **those** from about the upper waters of the Ti'gris and Euphra'tes.

405. If **there are those** who see in our parson a mere meddler, there are those also who know that he is earnestly and courageously working out a faith which is destined to enlighten the earth.

406. **There were those** still living at Mirbridge who remembered the house so, and especially the spectacle which it presented when Sir Marmaduke gave orders for it to be opened and refitted.

407. Three of four hours — the interval, **that is**, between lunch and dinner — it is his habit to devote to driving or riding about his estate.

408. These establishments are frequently to be met with in what are called populous places — districts, **that is**, in which some of the characteristics and feelings of both country and town are combined.

409. Her clothes should be picturesque rather than smart, and **that** from accident rather than design.

410. What pictures are to my brother, what horses are to you, **that** are books to me.

§ 80. The demonstrative pronoun is used substantively in the following cases:

1. when it precedes the noun to which it refers, as *this is my uncle, these are my children*;

¹⁾ Also spelt *Kelt*, and often pronounced in this way.

2. after *as* and *like* in expressions like *such fellows as these, a boy like that*;

3. in expressions such as *from this, this* (place), *ere this, after this*, where *this* denotes place or time, as *I shall have to leave this to-morrow*;

4. when *those* is followed by an attributive adjunct which is, or may be replaced by, a restrictive relative clause, as *those (who were) in the room*; before a continuative relative clause *this, that, these*, may be used as well, as *this, which lies here, is mine*;

5. in *there are (were, etc.) those who*, which renders the Dutch *er zijn (waren, enz.) er, die; er zijn, die*;

6. in *that is* (dat is; namelijk), *that* (dat wel);

7. when *that* refers to a preceding *what*, in which case it may be followed by a plural verb.

CCXLIX. Ik won heel veel geld; dat is te zeggen, heel veel voor een armen drommel, als ik, die heel wat moet werken, voor hij tien gulden verdiend heeft.

CCL. Hoewel er waren, die zich niet wilden laten overhalen om zoo laat in den avond op schaatsen terug te keeren, gingen toch de meesten met hem mee.

CCLI. Die daar op de tafel zijn de boeken, die ik gisteren op de verkooping heb gekocht; ze zijn alle nog zoo goed als nieuw, en ik heb ze gekregen voor een derde van den oorspronkelijken prijs; vindt ge dat niet zeer goedkoop?

CCLII. Gij moet naar hem toe gaan, en dat wel vroeg in den morgen, en hem vragen, of hij lust heeft een flinke wandeling met u te doen.

CCLIII. Hij had er *vroeger* (before this) over moeten spreken; nu is het te laat, te laat namelijk om er van avond nog heen te gaan.

CCLIV. Hij moet een uitstekend man geweest zijn; want zelfs diegenen, (die) hem vijandig (waren), gevoelden zich dikwijls gedrongen zijn goede hoedanigheden te prijzen.

CCLV. Ga hier vandaan, ondeugende kwajongen! Heb ik je niet honderdmaal gezegd er niet aan te komen, en nu heb je het toch gedaan.

411. His brother Duke, **he** of Nordland, would be obliged to build new and better cottages, which would cost him no end of money.

412. The week would be better than **the one** which had just been passed in such great misery.

413. **The one** in a black coat, that is **the one** I mean.

§ 81. *Die* referring to a person in the singular — sometimes also in reference to things — is translated by *the one* when it is qualified by a restrictive relative clause, or an attributive adjunct, often beginning with a preposition.

Sometimes *he* (acc. *him*) is found instead of *the one*.

CCLVI. Zijn broer, die in Amerika, niet die hier gebleven is, is verleden week gestorven en heeft hem, naar men zegt, een aanzienlijk vermogen nagelaten.

CCLVII. De oudste van de jongens, geloof ik, — die met de zwarte oogen, niet die met de blauwe, — sprong plotseling naar mij toe en zag mij aan, alsof hij wilde zeggen: „Meent ge dat?”

414. Some of the farms are nearly ten times **this size**, but their number is comparatively small, too many hands being required to work them.

415. **This much** I will recall to your recollection, that, when last year the same thing was tried, it proved a total failure.

416. Mr. A. bowed his head, in token that he knew **that much**. If the truth must be told, he had known it over twenty years.

§ 82. *Zoo groot, zoo lang, zooveel*, etc. are often translated by *this size, this length, this much*, etc.; *that much* must be rendered by *dat*.

CCLVIII. Ik was er zeker van, dat ge mij dat althans zoudt toestaan; gij moet er van overtuigd zijn, nu gij mij zoovele jaren kent, dat gij mij volkomen kunt vertrouwen.

CCLIX. Morgen om 8 uur verwacht ik je, hoor! Je hoofds helder genoeg om dat te begrijpen, dunkt mij.

CCLX. Als de stok tweemaal zoo lang geweest was, zouden we den bodem nog niet hebben kunnen bereiken; ten gevolge van de sterke strooming is het water hier zeer diep.

§ 83. Note the following renderings:

417. Some parts of the first Roman wall are to be seen *at this day* (nog heden ten dage).

418. He has scarcely done anything *this month past* (nu al in eene maand).

419. You have promised to bring me the money every time you have come to me *these last three years* (al drie jaar lang).

420. If it should ever be said that a Chuzzlewit displayed an overweening amount of family-pride, surely the weakness will be considered not only pardonable but laudable, when the immense superiority of the house to the rest of mankind, in respect of *this its* ancient origin, is taken into account.

421. A series of papers on *this or the other* (this or that) subject.

422. If *this or the other* little article could be accepted and paid for, a starving family might be saved from starvation for a month.

423. The boy cautiously crept up to me and said that, if I went to *such and such a place* (die en die plaats) at *such and such an hour*, I should be well rewarded for my pains.

424. The duchess could have controlled her own child no doubt, or she could have made it apparent to Mr. Winton that his assiduities were disagreeable; but she did nothing of **the sort**.

425. There had been a question whether a rail should not be placed for protection on the top of this cliff, but nothing of **the kind** had yet been done.

§ 84. In *of the kind, of the sort, at the time*, etc. instead of *of that kind, of this sort, at that time*, etc. the definite article has preserved its demonstrative force.

CCLXI. In Europeesche steden wordt uwe aandacht getrokken door de boekwinkels, schilderijen, caricaturen enz.; in Damascus hebben wij niets van dien aard.

CCLXII. Hij was een Spanjaard, en dat (wel) zoo geheel en al, dat *deze* (= de) omstandigheid alleen hem ongeschikt zou hebben gemaakt dit land te besturen.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

426. A human law is only the expression of the desire of *a multitude* **who** have power to punish.

427. Monmouth's hold on the hearts of the people will last till *the generation* **which** has seen him has passed away.

428. *The clergy*, **who** had hitherto supported him, now saw that they had been supporting their greatest enemy.

§ 85. Collective nouns denoting persons are followed by *who* when they require a plural verb, by *which* when the verb is singular.

CCLXIII. Wij voegden ons nu bij het groepje om den haard, dat geheel onbewust was gebleven van onze nadering.

CLXIV. Het leger, dat dien dag reeds acht uur op marsch geweest, werd aangevallen door eene afdeeling van den ind, en daar de soldaten zeer vermoeid waren, werd er nig tegenstand geboden.

CLXV. Het geheele gezelschap, dat het kamp om zes 's morgens had verlaten, de eene in deze richting, de ere in die, kwam tegen twaalf uur terug zonder een enkel z wild geschoten te hebben.

29. *Who that* has courage and patience will not make ther effort to deliver these poor people from the hands of ir cruel enemies.

30. It is not always *he who* sings loudest and jokes most t has the lightest heart.

31. My father sends me to know *who* it is **that** has been nis study, and has taken away one of his books.

32. He was pleased to get away from *a neighbourhood* a *landlord that* were alike disagreeable to him.

33. *Fool that* I was, I was in love with her, and thought to be the perfection of all virtues.

34. *Hypocrite that* you are! You pretend to help the r girl in her distress, and are planning all the time to rob of what she holds dearest.

86. *That* is always used:

. when the antecedent is *who*; see also 430 and 431, re *that* is used for the sake of euphony though the prece; *who* is not the antecedent;

. when the antecedent consists of two or more nouns ch cannot all of them take *who* or *which*;

. in expressions like *wretch that you are*, *fool that I was*.

CLXVI. Als je weer een voet in mijn huis durft zetten, genaar, die je bent, zal ik je door mijn knechts de deur n uitgooien.

CCLXXXVII. Dit is de Engelse scheper
 die ons bij te staan.
 CCLXXXVIII. Gelukkig kerel, die je bent
 die naar alle waarschijnlijkheid
 een maand vacante zal zijn.

435. Keston-rough, a fortress whose broken
 rise up to the grey flats which have taken the
 other sea channel, was the common landing-place
 from Gaul.

436. We now approached the engine-house, through
 long windows part of the machinery within was visible.
 437. The enemy advanced, driving before them
 whose foreheads were armed with iron plates.

§ 87. Whose is often used as the possessive of
 especially in dignified prose.

CCLXXX. Voor het kasteel stond een reusachtige
 welks takken gebroken waren door het geweld van den
 CCLXXXI. Ik herinner mij nog heel goed, dat wij ver-
 jaar een wandeling hebben gedaan van meer dan acht
 en bijna niet konden besluiten weer naar huis te gaan.
 was een dag, welks schoonheid ik niet gemakkelijk zal ver-

438. I stopped at a village, the situation of which
 beautifully rural and retired.
 439. The closest intimacies often exist between minds
 of which supplies what is wanting to the other.

440. The Dead Saviour by Van Dyck was painted soon after his return from Italy. The Virgin is represented supporting the head of the dead Christ on her knees; St. John shows the wound made by the nail in the left hand, to two angels, **one of whom** veils his face.

441. Metz, the capital of German Lorraine, with 53000 inhabitants, **more than a fourth of whom** are German settlers, lies in a wide basin on the Moselle, which flows in several arms through the town, **at the lower end of which** it is joined by the Seille on the right.

442. He established a school at N., a village not far from his former residence. There he spent nine happy years, **after the first of which** he married.

443. There I found back my book, **of which the leaves** were sadly torn.

444. I had received four hundred pair of skates, **of which** in a few days I had sold the greater part (the greater part **of which** I had sold in a few days).

§ 88. *Of whom* and *of which* are generally placed after the words they determine; they always follow when they qualify an adjunct beginning with a preposition; see 441, 442.

When they qualify the object of a relative clause, this object is placed after the verb, or before *of which* or *of whom* (444).

CCLXXII. De oorspronkelijke bewoners van Noord-Amerika behooren tot twee rassen — de Indianen en de Eskimo's — *die beide* (= beide waarvan) tot het Mongoolsche type schijnen te behooren.

CCLXXIII. Ongeveer dertig mijl ten westen van Land's End ligt eene groep eilanden, de Scilly-eilanden genoemd, *en op de twee grootste hiervan* (= op de twee grootste waarvan) zijn vuurtorens opgericht.

CCLXXIV. In de achttiende eeuw hadden onze landgenooten maar eenige forten gebouwd, waarvan er twee omgeven waren door grachten, die bijna 60 voet breed waren.

CCLXXV. Ik vrees, dat zij maatregelen
waarvan zij de gevolgen niet kunnen voorzien
onbekend zijn met het land en zijne bewoners.

CCLXXVI. Er waren spoedig eenige man-
nellen hun uiterste best deden om hulp te verleen
ten het schip met zijne bemanning te redden.

445. *A croak, who had flown away with a chick
stolen, sat perched on a tree, looking down at a
frog in a pool underneath him.*

§ 89. In fables *who* is used when the antecedent
animal or a thing personified.

CCLXXVII. Eene naald en eene speld, die beide
wat scherp waren uitgevallen, kregen op een morgen
met elkaar.

CCLXXVIII. Een beer, die dicht bij een bosch wa-
ring er alle dagen op uit om eten te zoeken en kwam
's avonds laat weer thuis.

446. *There is a gentleman below desires to see you.
Shall I show him up?*

447. *Here is a man can tell you everything about
know he has been there hundreds of times.*

448. *There is nothing puts me out so much as having
wait for a person.*

449. *"I see something strange, and not belonging to my
self, protruding from your skirts. Is it a foot or a claw?"*
"It might be a claw for the flesh there is upon it," was
sorrowful reply.

450. *I'm sure he didn't know the girl you are, or he would
never have asked you to be his wife.*

§ 90. A peculiar construction without the relative pronoun in the nominative case may be used:

1. when the principal sentence begins with *there is, there was, here is, here are, there will be*, etc. (446—448);
2. when the relative pronoun would be followed by *there is, there was*, etc. (449);
3. instead of a relative clause opening with the predicative *is, was* (450);

CCLXXIX. Hij is nu een geheel andere jongen dan de **chrik** van het dorp, die hij eerst was.

CCLXXX. Er is niemand, die zooveel voor hem kan doen, **als** gij; hij heeft mij herhaalde malen verzekerd, dat hij alleen **voor** u wilde luisteren.

CCLXXXI. Op het eerste gezicht ziet ze er gezond uit; **maar** de kleur, die er op hare wangen ligt, is bedriegelijk; haar **gezondheidstoestand laat veel te wenschen over** (leaves much to be desired).

CCLXXXII. De schelm, die hij is! Hij heeft mij gevraagd, **of** ik even in de kamer wou komen om hem te helpen, en **terwijl** heeft hij mijnen lessenaar doorsnuffeld om te zien, **waar** ik den brief geborgen heb.

451. "What place is this?" asked Scrooge. "*A place where* miners live, who labour in the bowels of the earth," returned the Spirit.

452. Many old men could remember *the time when* those animals were very common in this part of the country.

453. He rose to his greatest heights in *moments when* other men despaired.

454. I am about to tell you *the reason why* the land was so divided.

455. We found ourselves on *the top of the hill, whence* we could oversee the whole surrounding country.

CCLXXV. Ik vrees,
waarvan zij de gevolgen
onbekend zijn met het land
CCLXXVI. Er waren s
allen hun uiterste best deden
ten het schip met zijne bema

445. *A croak, who had flown
stolen, sate perched on a tree,
frog in a pool underneath him.*

§ 89. In fables *who* is used
animal or a thing personified.

CCLXXVII. Eene naald en eene
wat scherp waren uitgevallen, kregen
met elkaar.

CCLXXVIII. Een beer, die dicht
ging er alle dagen op uit om eten te z
's avonds laat weer thuis.

446. *There is a gentleman below desir
Shall I show him up?*

447. *Here is a man can tell you every
know he has been there hundreds of times.*

448. *There is nothing puts me out so m
wait for a person.*

449. "I see something strange, and not I
self, protruding from your skirts. Is it a
"It might be a claw for *the flesh* there is u
sorrowful reply.

450. I'm sure he didn't know *the girl you*.
never have asked you to be his wife.

The wild and
it came wi

91. As in Dutch *toe*
part of the head of a
where, whence, etc.
When the antecedent is a
is rendered by *tehen*

CLXXXIII. De wereld is
te vormen eene der 1

CLXXXIV. Geen van ons
schiedten richtten.

CLXXXV. Gelegen op eene
klimat der tropische zon niet
zelden tijd de lucht niet al te ze

CLXXXVI. Op het oordeelen
heerige bergdalen alle voordeelen
repen, zag ik, dat hijzelf ook doo

CLXXXVII. Eindelijk kwam de
natuurige stad moest begeven om vai

eenige anderen naar L. te worden ge.

457. Tom was a little shocked at Mag
him as well as his mother **what** it was

458. How can I be grateful to you w
certain things **which** every man is hapt

459. The landlord walked to the fire, v
lutely necessary to *keep up*, for the even

460. The secrecy necessary to obtain
burden **which** you, my dear, will often fi

to bear.

willing to dine at the Nimrod
to frequent.

became the happiest of the
was Mrs. Wortle's special
could get hold of them.
a journey.

g and dangerous one.
her, who, as I immediately
very severe if he liked,

forms part of a dependent
often placed in English
the dependent clause
; see, however, 458.

verborgen moeten wor-
den te begraven (= die
oor er niet aan te den-

die de schoolmeester
beantwoorden:
ons van de...

ona van belang kan

man muss alle reden
de lehrer...

20. *Chlorophyll a* (Chl a)
21. *Chlorophyll b* (Chl b)
22. *Chlorophyll c* (Chl c)
23. *Chlorophyll d* (Chl d)
24. *Chlorophyll e* (Chl e)
25. *Chlorophyll f* (Chl f)
26. *Chlorophyll g* (Chl g)
27. *Chlorophyll h* (Chl h)
28. *Chlorophyll i* (Chl i)
29. *Chlorophyll j* (Chl j)
30. *Chlorophyll k* (Chl k)
31. *Chlorophyll l* (Chl l)
32. *Chlorophyll m* (Chl m)
33. *Chlorophyll n* (Chl n)
34. *Chlorophyll o* (Chl o)
35. *Chlorophyll p* (Chl p)
36. *Chlorophyll q* (Chl q)
37. *Chlorophyll r* (Chl r)
38. *Chlorophyll s* (Chl s)
39. *Chlorophyll t* (Chl t)
40. *Chlorophyll u* (Chl u)
41. *Chlorophyll v* (Chl v)
42. *Chlorophyll w* (Chl w)
43. *Chlorophyll x* (Chl x)
44. *Chlorophyll y* (Chl y)
45. *Chlorophyll z* (Chl z)
46. *Chlorophyll aa* (Chl aa)
47. *Chlorophyll ab* (Chl ab)
48. *Chlorophyll ac* (Chl ac)
49. *Chlorophyll ad* (Chl ad)
50. *Chlorophyll ae* (Chl ae)
51. *Chlorophyll af* (Chl af)
52. *Chlorophyll ag* (Chl ag)
53. *Chlorophyll ah* (Chl ah)
54. *Chlorophyll ai* (Chl ai)
55. *Chlorophyll aj* (Chl aj)
56. *Chlorophyll ak* (Chl ak)
57. *Chlorophyll al* (Chl al)
58. *Chlorophyll am* (Chl am)
59. *Chlorophyll an* (Chl an)
60. *Chlorophyll ao* (Chl ao)
61. *Chlorophyll ap* (Chl ap)
62. *Chlorophyll aq* (Chl aq)
63. *Chlorophyll ar* (Chl ar)
64. *Chlorophyll as* (Chl as)
65. *Chlorophyll at* (Chl at)
66. *Chlorophyll au* (Chl au)
67. *Chlorophyll av* (Chl av)
68. *Chlorophyll aw* (Chl aw)
69. *Chlorophyll ax* (Chl ax)
70. *Chlorophyll ay* (Chl ay)
71. *Chlorophyll az* (Chl az)
72. *Chlorophyll aza* (Chl aza)
73. *Chlorophyll abz* (Chl abz)
74. *Chlorophyll aca* (Chl aca)
75. *Chlorophyll acb* (Chl acb)
76. *Chlorophyll acc* (Chl acc)
77. *Chlorophyll acd* (Chl acd)
78. *Chlorophyll ace* (Chl ace)
79. *Chlorophyll acf* (Chl acf)
80. *Chlorophyll acg* (Chl acg)
81. *Chlorophyll ach* (Chl ach)
82. *Chlorophyll aci* (Chl aci)
83. *Chlorophyll acj* (Chl acj)
84. *Chlorophyll ack* (Chl ack)
85. *Chlorophyll acl* (Chl acl)
86. *Chlorophyll acm* (Chl acm)
87. *Chlorophyll acn* (Chl acn)
88. *Chlorophyll aco* (Chl aco)
89. *Chlorophyll acp* (Chl acp)
90. *Chlorophyll acq* (Chl acq)
91. *Chlorophyll acr* (Chl acr)
92. *Chlorophyll acs* (Chl acs)
93. *Chlorophyll act* (Chl act)
94. *Chlorophyll acu* (Chl acu)
95. *Chlorophyll acv* (Chl acv)
96. *Chlorophyll acw* (Chl acw)
97. *Chlorophyll acx* (Chl acx)
98. *Chlorophyll acy* (Chl acy)
99. *Chlorophyll acz* (Chl acz)
100. *Chlorophyll azaa* (Chl azaa)
101. *Chlorophyll abzab* (Chl abzab)
102. *Chlorophyll acaca* (Chl acaca)
103. *Chlorophyll acbac* (Chl acbac)
104. *Chlorophyll accca* (Chl accca)
105. *Chlorophyll acdab* (Chl acdab)
106. *Chlorophyll aceca* (Chl aceca)
107. *Chlorophyll acfab* (Chl acfab)
108. *Chlorophyll acgac* (Chl acgac)
109. *Chlorophyll achab* (Chl achab)
110. *Chlorophyll aciac* (Chl aciac)
111. *Chlorophyll acjca* (Chl acjca)
112. *Chlorophyll ackab* (Chl ackab)
113. *Chlorophyll aclac* (Chl aclac)
114. *Chlorophyll acmac* (Chl acmac)
115. *Chlorophyll acnac* (Chl acnac)
116. *Chlorophyll acoab* (Chl acoab)
117. *Chlorophyll acpac* (Chl acpac)
118. *Chlorophyll acqac* (Chl acqac)
119. *Chlorophyll acrab* (Chl acrab)
120. *Chlorophyll acsac* (Chl acsac)
121. *Chlorophyll actab* (Chl actab)
122. *Chlorophyll acuac* (Chl acuac)
123. *Chlorophyll acvac* (Chl acvac)
124. *Chlorophyll acwab* (Chl acwab)
125. *Chlorophyll acxac* (Chl acxac)
126. *Chlorophyll acyac* (Chl acyac)
127. *Chlorophyll aczac* (Chl aczac)
128. *Chlorophyll azaab* (Chl azaab)
129. *Chlorophyll abzab* (Chl abzab)
130. *Chlorophyll acaca* (Chl acaca)
131. *Chlorophyll acbac* (Chl acbac)
132. *Chlorophyll accca* (Chl accca)
133. *Chlorophyll acdab* (Chl acdab)
134. *Chlorophyll aceca* (Chl aceca)
135. *Chlorophyll acfab* (Chl acfab)
136. *Chlorophyll acgac* (Chl acgac)
137. *Chlorophyll achab* (Chl achab)
138. *Chlorophyll aciac* (Chl aciac)
139. *Chlorophyll acjca* (Chl acjca)
140. *Chlorophyll ackab* (Chl ackab)
141. *Chlorophyll aclac* (Chl aclac)
142. *Chlorophyll acmac* (Chl acmac)
143. *Chlorophyll acnac* (Chl acnac)
144. *Chlorophyll acoab* (Chl acoab)
145. *Chlorophyll acpac* (Chl acpac)
146. *Chlorophyll acqac* (Chl acqac)
147. *Chlorophyll acrab* (Chl acrab)
148. *Chlorophyll acsac* (Chl acsac)
149. *Chlorophyll actab* (Chl actab)
150. *Chlorophyll acuac* (Chl acuac)
151. *Chlorophyll acvac* (Chl acvac)
152. *Chlorophyll acwab* (Chl acwab)
153. *Chlorophyll acxac* (Chl acxac)
154. *Chlorophyll acyac* (Chl acyac)
155. *Chlorophyll aczac* (Chl aczac)
156. *Chlorophyll azaab* (Chl azaab)
157. *Chlorophyll abzab* (Chl abzab)
158. *Chlorophyll acaca* (Chl acaca)
159. *Chlorophyll acbac* (Chl acbac)
160. *Chlorophyll accca* (Chl accca)
161. *Chlorophyll acdab* (Chl acdab)
162. *Chlorophyll aceca* (Chl aceca)
163. *Chlorophyll acfab* (Chl acfab)
164. *Chlorophyll acgac* (Chl acgac)
165. *Chlorophyll achab* (Chl achab)
166. *Chlorophyll aciac* (Chl aciac)
167. *Chlorophyll acjca* (Chl acjca)
168. *Chlorophyll ackab* (Chl ackab)
169. *Chlorophyll aclac* (Chl aclac)
170. *Chlorophyll acmac* (Chl acmac)
171. *Chlorophyll acnac* (Chl acnac)
172. *Chlorophyll acoab* (Chl acoab)
173. *Chlorophyll acpac* (Chl acpac)
174. *Chlorophyll acqac* (Chl acqac)
175. *Chlorophyll acrab* (Chl acrab)
176. *Chlorophyll acsac* (Chl acsac)
177. *Chlorophyll actab* (Chl actab)
178. *Chlorophyll acuac* (Chl acuac)
179. *Chlorophyll acvac* (Chl acvac)
180. *Chlorophyll acwab* (Chl acwab)
181. *Chlorophyll acxac* (Chl acxac)
182. *Chlorophyll acyac* (Chl acyac)
183. *Chlorophyll aczac* (Chl aczac)
184. *Chlorophyll azaab* (Chl azaab)
185. *Chlorophyll abzab* (Chl abzab)
186. *Chlorophyll acaca* (Chl acaca)
187. *Chlorophyll acbac* (Chl acbac)
188. *Chlorophyll accca* (Chl accca)
189. *Chlorophyll acdab* (Chl acdab)
190. *Chlorophyll aceca* (Chl aceca)
191. *Chlorophyll acfab* (Chl acfab)
192. *Chlorophyll acgac* (Chl acgac)
193. *Chlorophyll achab* (Chl achab)
194. *Chlorophyll aciac* (Chl aciac)
195. *Chlorophyll acjca* (Chl acjca)
196. *Chlorophyll*

in Van der Meer in 1900

...the ...
...the ...
...the ...

Verfasser: [illegible]
[illegible]

rod,
the
clal
in
y

en
oe
om
h
in
e
niet
like

oor
alles
ge-
dit
daarop
nomen
aar wij
loopen,
inhalen.

like a waggon.
considered as
upon

considering, the
translation requires
the English relative

de kamer, die alge-
houden werd.
het volken
eide

465. The meeting to which they seemed to look forward with the greatest impatience, was with Bantam, **which** I found to be a poney.

466. The sacred stone on which the older sovereigns of Scotland had been installed, an oblong block of sandstone, **which** legend asserted to have been the pillow of Jacob as angels ascended and descended upon him, was removed from Scone, and placed in Westminster Cathedral ¹⁾.

§ 93. The accusative with infinitive construction is often used also when the accusative is a relative pronoun.

CCXCIV. Hoe kan ik den man vergeven, die, naar ik weet, de oorzaak is geweest van al de rampen, die ons huis hebben getroffen.

CCXCV. Ik was van plan er over te spreken met mijn oom, die, naar ik veronderstelde, voldoende met hem bekend was om iets van de zaak te weten.

467. "What," Cædmon asked, "ought I to sing?" And the angel answered, "Sing the origin of Creation." Having received **which answer**, he began immediately to sing in praise of God.

468. It is too slight a foundation **on which** to assert a fact so inherently improbable.

469. I must now leave you, and go to the opera where the King will be, **to see whom** I have made this long journey.

470. The Spanish muleteer has an inexhaustible stock of songs and ballads, **with which** to beguile his incessant wayfaring.

¹⁾ *Scone* is situated near Perth in Scotland. The stone was brought to London by Edward I., in 1297, who ordered a seat to be made enclosing this sacred stone. On this seat, the coronation chair, all the sovereigns of England after Edward I. have been crowned. It is kept in Westminster Abbey, in Edward the Confessor's Chapel. By its side stands a second chair of the same form, made for the use of Queen Mary when she and William of Orange were crowned.

§ 94. In English we often use a relative pronoun in an infinitive or participial construction while in Dutch we have sentence containing a personal pronoun (469), a demonstrative (467), or one of the words *daarop*, *daarmede*, *daarin* (38, 470).

CCXCVI. Wij hebben zoo pas eenen brief ontvangen, dat oom e dagen kan komen, en om hem te ontvangen moet alles g in gereedheid worden gebracht.

CCXCVII. Hij had het geld dien avond niet als naar gewoonte naar de Bank doen brengen, en de dieven, die dit stelen, waren er zeker van een goede vangst te doen.

CCXCVIII. Dit zijn te onbepaalde beschuldigingen om daarop een aanklacht te gronden.

CCXCIX. Een der mannen scheen eenig gedruisch vernomen hebben en kwam naar dat gedeelte van den tuin, waar wij waren. Toen wij dit bemerkten, zetten wij het op een loopen, daar wij hem bijtijds hadden gezien, kon hij ons niet inhalen.

471. I perceived **what** appeared at a distance like a waggon.

472. Agriculture was in **what** would be now considered as very rude and imperfect state.

473. The window of my chamber looked out upon **what** in former times would have been a beautiful landscape.

§ 95. Before verbs of *being*, *seeming*, and *considering*, the relative *what* is often used when the Dutch translation requires *z*, *dat*, or has the predicative noun of the English relative clause as an antecedent.

CCC. Op dat oogenblik waren wij in eene kamer, die algeheel geschikt voor de mooiste van het kasteel gehouden werd.

CCCI. Ofschoon ik niets kon zien, daar het volkomen donker was, hoorde ik toch, dat mijn geleider een sleutel te

100. The more
with the greatest
to be a penny.
101. The sacri-
fice had be-
which legend as
arises ascended
to the place

93. The a-
ment when

104. IV. He
deed is ge-
petition

105. V. It is
some, the nar-
way, but not yet

106. "What,"
the angel answer
received which an
of that

107. It is to
fact so inherently
that I must
the King will be
108. The Spa-
nion and ballads

109. Some in situ
to London by Edw
closing than mere
movement of Eng
in Westminster Al
stands a second
Mary when she an

EXPRESSIONS:

and that month
of her residence

to promise that

gebeurde had me

gekochte is not we
you have done that

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

the differences between
to interrogative pronoun

checked a few weeks ago
weet gij van hem.

the functions (En nu w
the Mayor?

than our neighbours
temptation, our pride
not?

time about the Colonel's
journey, my own

the functions (En nu w
the Mayor?
than our neighbours
temptation, our pride
not?
time about the Colonel's
journey, my own

478. *What if you had never married* (En als u nu eens nooit getrouwd was), mamma?

479. *What if* he should try to regain his influence over her?

480. "*What then* (En wat zou dat dan nog)?" he retorted. Even if I have grown so much wiser, what then? I am not changed towards you."

481. *What though they have never asked us* (Al hebben ze ons ook nooit gevraagd) to spend an evening at their house, we need not bear them any ill-will for that.

482. *I'll tell you what.* (Weet je wat?) He has never been there; it is one lie from beginning to end.

483. *What* (hoe) is your name, my dear, and how old are you?

484. You need not be anxious about him, *he knows what what* (hij weet zich heel goed te redden; hij laat zich niet gemakkelijk foppen).

485. Is *this* your hat or mine? *I really don't know which which* (ik ken ze waarlijk niet uit elkaar).

CCCIII. Wat doet het er toe, dat het haar eenige malen mislukt is? Des te meer is het te prijzen, dat ze nogmaals een poging wil doen.

CCCIV. De tafel was bedekt met een groot aantal verschillende dingen: boeken, bloemen, een paar pistolen, timmergeregenschap en wat niet al.

CCCV. En als hij ons nu eens vroeg eenige dagen op zijn paard te brengen, wat dan? We zouden moeilijk kunnen weigeren, en toch zou ik er niet veel zin in hebben.

CCCVI. En al heeft zij zich wat veel moeten inspannen, wat dan nog? Ze kan nu eenige dagen van hare vermoeiessen uitrusten.

CCCVII. Je meent, dat ze uiterst zuinig moeten leven om geld te komen; maar zal ik je eens wat zeggen? Ze geven meer geld uit dan jij of ik.

CCCVIII. Kun je mij ook zeggen, hoe de rivier heet, waarvan Newcastle is gelegen?

CCCIX. En nu wat betreft uw vriend. zijne ouders thuis, of heeft hij de betrekking hem dezen winter is aangeboden?

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND NUM

486. He made as much as £ 1500 in a year as much, it is said, as **any one** writer of same period.

487. He is very careful to avoid the appearance of his company upon **any one** of them.

488. Here, once every week, the commissary of the Duke's tenants who desires an interview purpose.

§ 98. For the sake of emphasis **one** is sometimes used after *any* before a noun. In Dutch we use *één*, *onverschillig wie*; *eenig*.

CCCX. Het landgoed van den hertog van Cleves is misschien op een na het grootste van *in 't bezit zijn van* (owned by) één eigenaar.

CCCXI. Als ik alleen ben met één vriend onverschillig wie, mag ik gaarne over staatkunde spreken; maar gezelschap groot, dan houd ik er volstrekt niet van.

CCCXII. Ik kan het gemakkelijk uithouden tegen één stander, wie dan ook; maar wie moet niet voor de meetheid zwichten?

489. The life of the desert nomads, even when free from war and brigandage, is **one** of perpetual variety and excitement.

490. Our age may further be described as **one** distinguished by the economy and organisation of forces of all kinds.

This force, which seems to be of so little importance,
ne whose influence can be neglected.

One is used predicatively to avoid the repetition of
a noun when there is an attributive adjunct beginning
p preposition, or a relative clause.

III. Het leven van eenen jager is een leven van voort-
vermoeienis; bovendien is een jager vooral in berg-
steeds aan gevaren blootgesteld.

IV. Ofschoon zijne politiek *eene vredespolitiek* (= eene
van vrede) was, hielden zijne vijanden staande, dat
r gemakkelijk te voorkomen oorlogen het land had
t.

XV. Het boek, dat hij geschreven heeft, is een boek,
en gerust kinderen in handen kan geven; het bevat niets,
n jeugdig gemoed zou kunnen bederven.

My path here is beset with two difficulties. **One** may
sily overcome; **the other**, however, is all but insur-
table.

The one took his place in the witness-box, **the other**
e dock (bank der beschuldigden).

The *Trade Council* ¹⁾ usually holds an annual dinner,
at this dinner **one or other** of the parliamentary represent-
s of the borough may be expected to take his place as
uest of the evening.

If you give him **some book or other**, and let him sit

What Chambers of Commerce do for employers and capital, *Trade*
Is in some degree do for the employed and for labour. The Trade
il is a confederation of working men's delegates for industrial
es. Its business is to watch over the interests of labour and to
the wants and grievances of labour before the members of the
al Parliament.

in a corner by himself, he will say he has spent a pleasant evening.

496. Everywhere the country was pitilessly harried, churches plundered, men slaughtered. But with the **one** exception of London there was no attempt at defence.

497. Had they not fled, the giant would certainly have killed them **every one**.

498. They seemed **one and all** very busy when we entered the room.

§ 100. From the preceding sentences we see that *de eene ... de andere* is translated by *one ... the other*, less often by *the one ... the other*; *de eene of andere* is rendered by *one or other of* or by *some ... or other*; that *one* may be used as the equivalent of the Dutch *eenig* or *alleen* (with the *one* exception = met uitzondering alleen), and that *allemaal*, *allen* is often rendered by *every one* or *one and all*.

CCCXVI. Naar hunne woorden te oordeelen, zou niemand gedacht hebben, dat het verkrijgen van rijkdommen het eenige doel was, waarnaar zij streefden.

CCCXVII. De kinderen stierven allen, vóór ze meerderjarig waren, zoodat het ongelukkige echtpaar in hunnen ouderdom geheel alleen was.

CCCXVIII. Als je ooit in het eene of andere van die oude huizen gewoond hadt, zou je de bewoners niet langer benijden, veeleer beklagen.

CCCXIX. Hij stond met zijnen hoed in (de) eene hand te draaien, nu eens op 't eene been rustende, dan weer op het andere, terwijl hij tusschenbeide den dokter aankeek.

CCCXX. Ik heb ze gezien, allemaal, en ik weet, hoe gemakkelijk het is ze na te maken, als men slechts de vereischte werktuigen heeft.

499. It will cost **as much as** eighty pounds to have the old house repaired.

500. The Danes landed on our coasts and marched against us. They were, however, defeated with great slaughter, **as many as** three thousand being killed in that battle.

501. He will promise anything. He promised he would pay my college bills when my father died; he promised he would build the new wing to the rectory, *and much he executed his promises* (en wat is er van al die beloften gekomen?).

502. I know it is cruel, but we have got accustomed to it; **much** the same thing (= about the same thing) occurs nearly every day.

503. **Many** were the days that I had spent on my good skates, never thinking that they would thus prove my only means of safety.

§ 101. *Wel* before a numeral is rendered by *as much as* (quantity), *as many as* (number).

Much is used ironically for *not at all, nothing*; *much the same* (zoowat hetzelfde) is used in familiar style for *about the same*.

For the sake of emphasis *many* may be used predicatively, and is then often translated bij *talrijk*.

CCCXXI. Talrijk waren de bewijzen van deelneming, welke wij in die dagen van treurigheid ontvingen, ook van overigens niet vriendschappelijk gezinde personen.

CCCXXII. Het zal heel veel geld kosten, wel 200 gulden, denk ik. Zou uw vader er dat wel voor over hebben?

CCCXXIII. Je bent er drie uur mee bezig geweest, hoor ik? Het heeft mij zoowat denzelfden tijd gekost.

CCCXXIV. Wij hebben er zeer veel tijd en moeite aan besteed, en wat goed zal het ons doen? Niemand zal er ons dankbaar voor zijn, daar kunt ge op rekenen.

§ 102. Note the following compounds of *some* and *any*:

504. I suppose he must have left *somewhere about* (zoowat in) the year 1830.

505. He is a lawyer of great repute, and realizes *something like* (zoowat) three thousand pounds a year.

506. The co-operative movement *has never attained in Yorkshire anything like the (same) successful development* (heeft nooit in Yorkshire eene ontwikkeling bereikt, die ook maar in de verste verte te vergelijken is met die) which has fallen to its lot in Lancashire.

507. This frock is *not anything like* (lang niet) so pretty as the one we saw in the shop-window.

508. In none of the typical cathedral cities of England is there **anything like** this amount of busy, bustling, various life.

509. *Somewhat* (eenigszins) disturbed by the events of the evening, he could not listen to her complaints with his usual kindness and patience.

510. **Something like** despair was plainly discernible on her face.

511. Do you believe they would have hailed her name with **anything of** respect if they had thought her guilty of such dishonesty?

512. It seemed to the Doctor that **something of** condemnation was implied in the tone of the question.

CCCXXV. Hij verdedigde mij met lang niet zooveel ijver, als hij vroeger betoond had; het scheen mij toe, dat hij eenigszins onverschillig was geworden voor mijne belangen.

CCCXXVI. Ik verbeeldde mij iets nederbuigends te zien in de wijze, waarop hij mij aansprak, en er is niets, *waaraan ik een grooteren hekel heb* (= dat ik meer haat).

CCCXXVII. Niets van hetgeen zij zeiden had ook maar in de verste verte de uitwerking, die teweeg was gebracht door zijne woorden.

513. I cannot but feel kindness and admiration for this good man. I know his works *are made to square* (in overeenstemming zijn) with his faith, that he dines on a crust, lives as chastely as a hermit, and gives **his all** to the poor.

§ 103. *All* used substantively, and preceded by a possessive pronoun, means *all one has*.

CCCXXVIII. Geene vrouw, die den naam van vrouw waard is, kan nalaten eenige toegenegenheid te gevoelen voor een braaf man, die haar alles aanbiedt, wat hij heeft.

§ 104. Note the following idiomatic expressions with *all*, and renderings of the Dutch *al*, *alles*, *allen*.

514. The cold seemed to have frozen tree, and air, and water, and *every living thing* (alles, wat leven heeft).

515. She had determined to forget the lover of her youth, and, if she could not forget him, she had sworn that she would be *all things* (alles) to her husband.

516. There are some women in the world to whom love and truth are *all in all* (alles) here below.

517. I know that he had erred chiefly through love of myself, and though my reason condemned the act, my feelings whispered that it was not so bad *after all* (toch).

518. **Once for all** I tell you that I will not have anybody in my room when I am not there.

519. "I have come to bring you home, dear brother!" "Home, little Fan?" returned the boy. "Yes!" said the child brimful of glee. "Home *for good and all* (voor goed). Home for ever and ever."

520. I suppose you have seen from the papers that he is going to the North Pole? It is *like him* (net iets voor hem).

He hankers after originality, I suppose. Being born in the south, he naturally goes to the extreme north.

521. Scrooge was **not a (the) man** to be frightened by echoes. He fastened the door, and walked across the hall, and up the stairs; slowly too: trimming his candle as he went.

§ 105. *Niet iemand* is rendered by *not a (the) man (woman)*.

It is *like my father* = het is net iets voor mijn vader; zoo is mijn vader altijd.

CCCXXIX. Zij is niet iemand om alleen te wonen in zulk een groot huis; het is net iets voor mijn vader om daar niet aan te denken.

CCCXXX. Ik zie wel, dat je hem nog niet kent. Hij is niet iemand, die uit vrees zal doen, wat hij om een andere reden gelaten heeft.

522. *We none of us* (geen van ons allen) could explain why the money had been returned.

523. It is a long time since a new edition of the book was promised, and the performance of this promise has come **none too soon**.

524. We had to bear in patience what Providence laid upon our shoulders; for way of escape from the island there was **none**.

§ 106. Wij (zij) . . . geen van allen = We (they) none of us (them).

In *none of the best*, *none too often*, etc. *none* means *not at all* (volstrekt niet).

None used predicatively is emphatic.

CCCXXXI. Zij wisten geen van allen, waar wij gebleven waren, zoodat er geen einde kwam aan de vragen, toen wij ons weer bij het gezelschap voegden.

CCCXXXII. Het is volstrekt niet te warm in deze kamer; zie eens, de thermometer staat op 52° Fahrenheit. Je moogt het vuur wel wat aanstoken.

CCCXXXIII. Het is vervelend wachten in deze kamer. Goede boeken zijn er *volstrekt niet* (= geene), en de couranten zijn twee of drie dagen oud.

525. Honour was his idol, and the sense of honour paid him for the loss of **all else** (**everything else**).

§ 107. *Else* is placed not only after *some* and *any* and their compounds, but also after *all*, and the compounds of *every*, as *everybody else*.

CCCXXXIV. Ik geloof, dat hij er nooit aan heeft getwijfeld, of hij wel de geschikte man was voor dit werk, hoewel hij twijfelde aan alle andere dingen.

526. Mr. and Mrs. Fezziwig took their stations, one on either side the door, and shaking hands with *every person* individually as **he or she** went out, wished **him or her** a Merry Christmas.

527. *Everybody* had been very kind in **their** way, all her uncles and aunts.

528. Go out into the street, and ask *the first man or woman* you meet what **their** taste is, and if **they** answer candidly, you know them, body and soul.

§ 108. When *every one*, *everybody* refers both to males and females, *they*, *their* is often used in connection with it, to avoid the awkward *he or she*, *him or her*; see also 528.

CCCXXXV. Mijn vader is van meening, dat iedereen een bijzonderen aanleg heeft voor het een of ander, en als men dien bij hem of haar ontwikkelt, alles goed moet gaan.

CCCXXXVI. „Waarom moet ik mijn hoed en jas hier laten?” vroeg ik. „De menschen klagen er over,” antwoordde de man, „dat zij niet behoorlijk naar en van hunne plaats kunnen komen, omdat de hoeden, jassen en mantels van anderen hun altijd in den weg zijn. Daarom is er besloten, dat iedereen zijnen hoed en dergelijke dingen in de jassenkamer moet laten.”

529. **Nothing** doubting that next time I should be more successful, I did not care that they laughed at me.

§ 109. In some expressions *nothing* is found for *not at all*. This use of nothing is, however, obsolescent.

CCCXXXVII. Ik ben geenszins verlangend daar zoo vroeg heen te gaan; maar als wij vóór het diner thuis willen zijn, wordt het nu toch tijd.

530. Scrooge's heart was filled with gladness when he heard the boys give each other Merry Christmas, as they parted at cross-roads and by-ways for their **several** homes.

§ 110. *Several* preceded by a possessive pronoun has a distributive sense, and is rendered by *ieder zijn eigen*, *ieder voor zich*, *respectief*: *their several names* (hunne respectieve namen), etc.

CCCXXXVIII. Wij bleven een paar uur bijeen om elkaar onze bevindingen mede te deelen, en daarop ging ieder weer zijn eigen weg.

CCCXXXIX. Zij stonden naast den man aan het roer, den uitkijk *bij* (in) den boeg, de stuurlieden, die de wacht hadden, donkere spookachtige gedaanten op hunne respectieve *stand-plaatsen* (station), maar ieder van hen neuriede een kerstlied of had eene kerstgedachte.

CHAPTER VII.

THE VERB.

TO BE, TO DO, SHALL, WILL, ETC.

31. He had been taken prisoner **when engaged** in some loit which was contrary to the usages of war.

32. St. Anthony in his hermitage was beset by as many ds as had ever troubled him **when in the world**.

33. The body of the crocodile appears **as if covered** with ind of armour. The animal seldom leaves the water unless ssed by hunger or for the purpose of laying its eggs.

34. **While at Rome**, Flaxman was commissioned to exe- e his famous monument in memory of Lord Mansfield.

35. As long as the passage lasts, she is in mortal fear; **on the deck**, she thinks the water is rushing in below; **if vn below**, she is convinced there is danger.

36. The parson, **as depicted** for the benefit of the agri- rural labourer by *his* (diens) champions, is one half a design- mystery-man, and the other half a smooth-tongued bandit.

37. This poem, **as already stated**, attracted Pope's notice made him desirous of making the writer's acquaintance.

38. **Those more cautious** in forming their conclusions, perhaps think that the man had stationed himself there ply to attract our attention.

111. Ellipsis of *to be* with its subject takes place, when re is no ambiguity:

. in adverbial clauses beginning with *when, if, while, however, though, unless, because, as if, till, until, as, where* (531—537);

. in relative clauses (538).

CCXL. Zij, die beter in staat zijn een goed oordeel over boek te vellen, zullen het niet doen, voor ze het met dacht hebben gelezen.

CCCXLI. Wij moeten niet het gevoel van een ander deelen, naar hetgeen wij zouden gevoelen, indien wij in plaats waren.

CCCXLII. Zij bleef mij steeds aankijken, alsof zij niet van overtuigd was, dat ik niets kwaads bedoelde.

CCCXLIII. Geen verzoekschrift wordt door den koning zen, tenzij het hem door zijnen gunsteling wordt overha

CCCXLIV. Mijn vader, die nog niet geheel overtuig van het nut der ontdekking, hoorde den man aan zonde iets te beloven.

CCCXLV. Ofschoon hij zeer arm is, kunt gij hem volle vertrouwen; hij zal geen stuiver nemen, die de niet is.

§ 112. Note the use of *to be* in the following sent

539. If a foreigner were to ask how it *is* (komt) that things can happen in our country, we should try to satisfactory explanation.

540. Dear Johnson, — This note *is* (dient) to int. Mrs. Murray, the widow of a brother-officer, and one best friends.

541. The other day I saw Miss Trotter (*that wa* heette ze vóór haar trouwen] arrayed in orange blo trip into the travelling carriage at *St. George's, Ha Square* ¹⁾, and Lord Methusaleh hobbling in after.

542. How can you hope ever to get a reasonably position if you are obnoxious to the *powers that be* (best machten)?

543. That, like Lord Brougham, you pretended to order to see how you would look in *rose colour* ²⁾, *is c* to be said of you (Er zal zeker van je gezegd worden, dat

¹⁾ A church where many fashionable marriages are performed

²⁾ Rose-coloured curtains, sometimes arranged round the l which a corpse was laid out in state.

544. He is one of many teachers whose own circumstances **are** not likely to make them severe censors of young men such as you.

545. The child is **sure** to come back if you give it the least encouragement; so you had better leave things as they are.

546. Will you please wait here till I come back? I shan't **e** (wegblijven) five minutes.

547. I **am bound** to believe so distinguished an authority as Dr. B. when he states that, although the Americans are fast eaters, or used to be so a quarter or half a century ago, yet in the quantity of food and drink which they consume, they are surpassed both by the English and by the Germans.

548. She had escaped from him before she **was bound** to understand what it meant.

549. The narrative of her sufferings, and how she had borne them, **could not fail** to make a deep impression on her audience.

550. "My story need not be long," she began, "and I will not make it longer than I **can help**; it is no pleasure to me to dwell upon it."

§ 113. Instead of *cannot but*, *must*, we often use other expressions, as *to be bound*, *cannot fail*, *cannot help*.

CCCXLVI. Wij moeten u er aan herinneren, dat, als het geld niet vóór den eersten Augustus is betaald, wij u in nechtenis moeten laten nemen.

CCCXLVII. Heb ik u niet gezegd, dat gij de waarheid er van moest inzien, als hij u de zaak had uitgelegd?

CCCXLVIII. Ik kan mij gemakkelijk begrijpen, dat je er niet veel zin in hebt hun eene visite te maken; maar het moet, en daarom zullen wij het maar zoo gauw mogelijk doen, vind je ook niet?

CCCLIX. Ik zou niet gaarne iets zeggen, dat mijn eer aan zijn eer; maar ik ben gesloten van hetgeen er gebeurd is.

s 114. Note the following renderings of *moeten*:

- What if you *must* (moet je) in that room?
 I wish that I would not have anybody in there?
 Have you been *doing* there (Wat moet men daar doen)?
 Have you been caught you robbing my orchard?
 What is the meaning of all this (Wat moet men van al dit)?
 You must go over the door, and not a single piece of furniture.
 Have you been fighting again?
 You may be quite sure that I'm not going to help (ik moet).
 My eldest son will enter the Church, and his second son will enter the army (moet officier worden).
 A large picture which *was intended* for a king.
 King George III *moest* voorstellen over the door.

CCCL. Ik darf niet in de studeerkamer komen, daar is want, zodra men de deur opendoet, roept men mij en de toon alleen is voldoende om iemand te jagen.

CCCLI. Wat moet dat? Wil je wel gauw hier komen van die ladder afblijven? Je kunt den man wel doen wonden jongens.

CCCLII. Deze woorden *moesten* dienst doen als (toe) lende tot berisping; maar in plaats daarvan toonde aan, hoe groot de liefde was, die hij zijn kind toedroeg.

CCCLIII. I am quite *unable* to see that it would be least advantage to us.
 CCCLIV. You will *fail* as well as I to get on in the

I think that treading on the toes of men in power will secure you a good position.

559. In after life her pride was subdued; but at this time, for some years after, she *was impatient of* (kon niet uit- an) commonplace people, and did not choose to conceal her rn.

560. "*I have no patience with him*" (ik kan hem niet uit- an), observed Scrooge's niece.

561. *I had no idea* (ik kon mij niet begrijpen) where she ght be.

§ 115. To express various shades of meaning, and in tain expressions, *niet kunnen* is rendered by *to be unable*, *fail*, etc.

CCCLIII. Al doet ge ook nog zoo uw best, hij is zoo veel- chend, dat gij zijne wenschen niet zult kunnen bevredigen; mand kan dat.

CCCLIV. Bob Swinney placht te zeggen, dat Brough twee n zijne paarden *door* de Maatschappij *liet betalen* (to charge ; maar *men kon nooit de helft gelooven* (there was never lieving half) van wat die Bob zei.

CCCLV. Ofschoon hij geen fortuin heeft kunnen maken in Oost, zijn toch de jaren, die hij daar heeft doorgebracht, st onvruchtbaar geweest. Gij kunt niet begrijpen, hoezeer in zijn voordeel is veranderd.

562. These attributes **may or may not** constitute a legiti- ate cause for parental pride; but I suppose it will hardly denied that they usually excite it.

563. She had some photographs to show to Jim, who **may** : **may not** have been as interested as he professed to be.

564. **Do what he might**, he could not blind my eyes to e fact that he had shamefully abandoned his parents when ey were old and poor.

... is rende.
 ... ook niet
 ... = want hij ook
 ... of hij er as
 ... was. heb ik
 ... woult spreken.
 ... deed. hij kon
 ... bedoelingen had
 ... is hij de geschikte ma
 ... onder onze kenniss

... with us, my fath
 ... He shrugged his shoulde
 ... of she wills. In this country the won
 ... and kind gentleman went awa
 ... might have happened again if heav
 ... saying that it might have happened again if heav
 ... willd it.

§ 117. Though not in every-day language, *will* used as a transitive verb of the regular conjugation.

CCCLIX. Indien de Voorzienigheid het gewild had, nu een rustig leven leiden. in plaats van rusteloos ene plaats naar de andere te zwerven.
 CCCLX. Gaarne had ik hem vergiffenis geschonk mijn huis en hart weer voor hem geopend; maar hij het niet gewild, en nu is het, vrees ik, te laat.

567. They are each of them names suggestive of a which **will compare** (= may be compared) not unfav with those of older foundation.
 568. I have very important business with

will not keep until to-morrow (die niet uitgesteld kunnen worden tot morgen).

569. As if to show to what extent folly **will carry** man, he even insulted in that moment of madness the man to whom he owes everything in life.

§ 118. *Will* with a following infinitive, especially with an intransitive verb that has a passive meaning, is sometimes translated by *kan* and a passive verb, or by *zich laten* and an active verb.

CCCLXI. Hij heeft een sterke *neiging* (bias) voor poëzie, vooral van de nieuwe soort, die zich niet laat vertalen of ontleden.

CCCLXII. Zulke huizen kunnen uitstekend vergeleken worden bij fijn uitgesneden ivoeren speelgoed, dat er prachtig uitziet, maar *niet gebruikt kan worden* (cannot be used).

CCCLXIII. Het zal u niet berouwen, als gij de boeken koopt. Indien gij ze laat binden, kunnen ze gemakkelijk verkocht worden voor 10 gulden 't stuk.

CCCLXIV. Hij had een hekel aan die luidruchtige vroolijkheid, die *door niets tot bedaren kon worden gebracht* (nothing would subdue).

§ 119. Note the use of *will*, *would*, and renderings of the Dutch *willen*, in the following sentences:

570. We nurse our plants as well as anybody else, *yet they will die* (en toch gaan ze dood).

571. Boys *will be* (blijven) boys, and girls **will** be girls *for the matter of that* (wat dat betreft).

572. Every now and again Jim **would** go up to London for a day, whence he **would** return a little pale and fagged, but quite delighted with the hospitality of the officers of the 4th Life Guards, whose existence according to his account **would (should)** appear to have been a merry one.

573. It occurred, as it **would (should)** seem, to one wiser than the rest to go and see where the gentleman **was**, and to his utter astonishment he found the safe open, and the banknotes and the gentleman gone.

574. The manufacture of white-lead has now been made as safe an occupation as the necessities of the case **will** allow.

575. She has been very brave on the whole, but at times, *try as she would* (al deed ze ook nog zoo haar best), she could not help crying.

576. *As luck would have it* (Het toeval wilde, dat), the two friends sat together behind them, and heard every word of the conversation.

577. He flung the whip away from him, and swore that, *come what would* (wat er ook mocht gebeuren), he would never strike the boy again.

578. *I was at first for declining this invitation* (ik wou eerst deze uitnoodiging afslaan), and spoke of it with great scorn when Mr. N. orally delivered it to me at our club.

579. He knew very well that he could have married a peer's daughter *had he been so minded* (als hij het gewild had), that there were few noblemen in England who would not have been well content to accept him as a son-in-law.

580. *It is desirable* that she **should** see some of the best society of the day, and so we intend to go up to London for two or three seasons.

581. *It was impossible* that B. **should** marry her; for his wants were many, and her dowry was but small.

582. *It seems to me absurd* that friendship between a man and a woman **should** be considered impossible.

583. *It was natural* that we **should** be a little tired, having walked for two hours.

584. *It was perhaps right* that he **should** give utterance to his views, but could not he have done it in a less offensive manner?

585. *It was perhaps well* that our poor little child **should** have been taken from us.

586. *It would be intolerable* that one **should** be called upon to stand up and be shot at because some bully or other had purposely trodden upon one's toe.

587. The Duchess had made up her mind that the parties in question would adopt a certain course of procedure, and *it seemed*, therefore, *incredible* to her that they **should** have pursued another.

588. *It is not enough* that the English pleasure town **should** have a fine situation, good houses, picturesque views, and popular clergymen, it must also have good schools, and the favourable opinion of eminent doctors.

589. *The marvel* of the book *is* not so much that the hero **should** evidently think well of himself, as that the author **should** so tell his story as to appear to be altogether on the hero's side.

590. Thackeray *was disgusted* that such names **should** be lugged into ordinary conversation, and then that a man **should** talk about names with which he was so little acquainted as not to know how to pronounce them.

§ 120. After impersonal expressions such as *it is desirable*, *it is strange*, *it is impossible*, *it is well*, etc., and some others that convey the same meaning, as *I regret*, *the marvel is*, etc., the compound form of the subjunctive with *should* is used, even where in Dutch we find the present or perfect of the indicative mood. This construction is made use of when we want to express what *should* or *should not* be. So in "*It is strange that he should be here*" we give as our opinion that he *should not* be here; in "*It is desirable that something should be done*" we say that something *should* be done.

When the dependent clause denotes a fact, as in the former instance, the indicative may also be used: *It is strange that he is here*.

CCCLXV. Hij vloekte zijne dwaasheid en onvoorzichtigheid,

terwijl hij *zich afvroeg* (to wonder), hoe het (toch) mogelijk was, dat het verhaal *ruchtbaar* was *geworden* (to get abroad).

CCCLXVI. „Ben jij daar?” „Ja, wie zou ik anders zijn? Hoe vreemd is het (toch), dat, juist als men iemand ziet, men hem vraagt, of men hem ziet of niet.”

CCCLXVII. Het is zeer vleierend, dat ze beiden zoo verlangend zijn naar onze tegenwoordigheid.

CCCLXVIII. Het is in allen gevallen niet meer dan billijk, dat men hem een kansje geeft zijn fortuin te herstellen, en bovendien, zoo zal hij misschien na verloop van tijd zijne schuldeischers kunnen voldoen.

CCCLXIX. Was het wel *te verwonderen* (wonderful), dat hij twijfelde aan mijn goede trouw en eenige inlichtingen aangaande mij verlangde?

CCCLXX. Het is zeer te wenschen, dat hij zich vestigt op een dorp, waar men werkelijk behoefte heeft aan een goed geneesheer.

CCCLXXI. Hij heeft zijn eigen voordeel altijd het meest laten wegen. Is het dan wel denkbaar, dat hij in deze zaak geheel belangeloos zal handelen?

591. I did not precisely understand *why* he **should** have looked so pale and seemed so anxious.

592. I don't see *why* he **should** have any particular reason for respecting himself.

593. I have often wondered *why* ladies **should** act in this way.

§ 121. In dependent clauses beginning with *why* should is used under the same conditions as have been named in the preceding paragraph. Instead of a principal sentence and a dependent clause beginning with *why* we often use an interrogative sentence, in which case *should* is also employed. So we say *I wonder why he should not come*, or *Why should he not come?*

CCCLXXII. Ik begrijp niet, waarom je hem beklaagt en hem tracht te redden uit de moeilijkheden, die hij aan zichzelf te wijten heeft.

CCCLXXIII. Waarom deze opmerking haar geërgerd heeft, kan ik u niet zeggen; maar dat zij er door geërgerd is, is zeker.

CCCLXXIV. Ik zou wel eens willen weten, waarom hij naar mij toe kwam en mij zoo vriendelijk uitnoodigde eenige dagen bij hem op zijn buiten door te brengen; als hij te vertrouwen was, deed ik het zeker.

§ 122. The use of *shall*, *should* in the following sentences deserves notice:

594. I was interrupted by the entrance of a second visitor, and *who should this prove to be but B. himself* (en daar was waarlijk B. zelf)!

595. Just then, who **should** come in but Mrs. N. in a state of great excitement.

596. Who **shall** say what proportion of fact, past, present, or to come, may lie in the imagination?

597. Other ladies do not like her as a rule — *how should they* (hoe zou dat ook kunnen)?

598. He is not blameless, far from it; indeed, *he is no better than he should be* (er valt niet op hem te roemen); but he is not so depraved as you make him out.

CCCLXXV. Wie zal zeggen, wat er in dergelijke gevallen gedaan moet worden, als zelfs de dokters het niet eens zijn?

CCCLXXVI. Ik was den geheelen dag niet uit geweest, daar ik niet recht wel was, en begon het wel wat eenzaam te vinden. Plotseling werd de deur van mijne kamer geopend, en wie was daar? Niemand anders dan een oud vriend van mij, dien ik in jaren niet gezien had.

599. He **need not have told** everybody that he had visited the country, had spent a few weeks there, and had made the acquaintance of one of the ministers of state.

600. It was part of his plan to make others feel that they **need only take** a sufficient pride in themselves to become as shining lights in the social world as himself.

601. You **need not be** in such a hurry; there is time enough to take a ticket and have your luggage labelled.

602. He had nothing in him that **need have repelled** a woman.

603. It is in such transitional moments of a nation's history that **it needs** the cool prudence, the sensitive selfishness, the quick perception of what is possible, which distinguished the adroit politician (Godwine) whom the death of Cnut left supreme in England.

604. He is never down-hearted; **it needs** something extraordinary indeed to sadden his cheerfulness.

605. One **would need to be learned** in the fashions of those times to know how far in the rear of them Mrs. Glegg's slate-coloured gown must have been.

606. **There is no need for you to laugh** at me, at least I am not aware of having done or said anything ridiculous.

607. **There was no need of words to know** what had happened.

§ 123. When *need*, like *can*, *shall*, etc., is followed by an infinitive without *to*, it is not used with the auxiliary *to do*, and does not take an *s* in the third person singular; in this case the past tense has the same form as the present.

Er is (was enz.) noodig, men heeft (had enz.) noodig, are translated by *it needs, it needed, it will need*, etc.

To need followed by a noun or an infinitive with *to*, follows the same rules as any other notional verb: *he needs patience, he will need to be quick about it*, etc.

There is no need for you (them, him, etc.) = you (they, he, etc.) need not.

There was no need of words (an explanation, etc.) = words (an explanation, etc.) were (was) not needed.

CCCLXXVII. Het behoeft nauwelijks gezegd te worden, dat na deze heldhaftige daad de jonge officier door allen met onderscheiding werd behandeld.

CCCLXXVIII. Er is veel zelfvertrouwen noodig om in moeilijke omstandigheden dadelijk te handelen.

CCCLXXIX. Iedereen ziet de wenschelijkheid in, dat hij zich uit het openbare leven terugtrekt; maar er zal zeer veel moed noodig zijn hem dat te zeggen.

CCCLXXX. Hij behoeft niet te denken, dat wij het niet zonder hem kunnen stellen; een mensch is nooit volstrekt noodzakelijk, en dat is maar gelukkig ook.

CCCLXXXI. *Er is* (There is) geen groote scherpzinnigheid noodig om te zien, dat het plan niet de minste kans van slagen heeft.

CCCLXXXII. Als uw vriend zegt, dat hij uwe hulp noodig heeft, zult gij dan weigeren hem bij te staan, en hem aan zijn lot overlaten?

608. I knew very well (and so, I **doubt not**, did her ladyship) that they would ask her to their houses.

609. As for what was passing in her mind that afternoon as she sat at the window, I **know not**.

610. Everything was very quiet. The clock, for one, was not in a hurry. Its tick showed that Time **rests not** — but **hastes not**.

611. "How **comes it** that you have forgotten everything about it? How **came you** by that horse?" — I stammered something, I **know not** what.

612. They **did not have** a bad evening when they came to me. There was plenty of wine in the cupboard, and I had provided a good supper.

613. Why **did not** you **have** it done by another when you saw that his taste was quite different from yours?

614. **Do not** you always **have** your clothes made at Smith & Son's? I thought you told me so when I advised you to try another.

§ 124. In poetry, in elevated style, in the language of the Bible, and for the sake of emphasis, *to do* may be omitted in questions and negations.

Also in every-day English the omission of *to do* is sometimes met with, as *I know not, how came it?* etc.

When *to have* is used as a notional verb, *to do* is often used in familiar style; also, when it is rendered in Dutch by *laten*.

CCCLXXXIII. Of zij al dien tijd op ons gewacht hadden, weet ik niet; zooveel is zeker, dat wij hen bij onze terugkomst op dezelfde plaats vonden.

CCCLXXXIV. Hoe kwam het toch, dat wij niet wisten, van welken kant zij moesten komen? Een van ons had dat moeten vragen, voor wij van huis gingen.

CCCLXXXV. Waarom liet gij u alles niet uitleggen door den rentmeester; hij is geheel met de zaken op de hoogte en is steeds bereid inlichtingen te geven.

CCCLXXXVI. Leid ons niet in verzoeking, maar verlos ons van *den booze* (evil).

CCCLXXXVII. "Verlaat mij niet in deze bange ure," zeide hij, smeevend zijne handen opheffend; „laat mij niet te vergeefs mijne hoop op u hebben gevestigd."

LATEN AND WORDEN.

615. Scrooge was not a man **to be frightened** by echoes. He fastened the door, and walked across the hall, and up the stair, slowly too: trimming his candle as he went.

616. The schoolmaster was a learned little fellow, who **was not to be daunted** by the most gigantic word in the dictionary.

617. The doctor's rage at hearing this, **may be** more easily **imagined** than **described**.

618. It **cannot be supposed** that he will leave off his evil ways all at once; but by continually trying to be good, he is certain to succeed in the end.

§ 125. In Dutch we say *hij was niet te overreden, men kan denken* for *hij liet zich niet overreden, het laat zich denken*; in English we often translate *zich laten* by a passive voice: *he was not to be persuaded, it may be imagined*.

CCCXXXVIII. Het laat zich denken, hoe gelukkig de moeder was, toen het kind zijne oogen opende en haar vroolijk toelachte, terwijl het in 't minst geen letsel scheen te hebben bekomen.

CCCLXXXIX. De staatkundige partijen stonden lijnrecht tegenover elkaar, ofschoon het zich toen reeds liet aanzien, dat er weldra eene toenadering zou plaats hebben.

CCCXC. De eerlijke jongen liet zich niet overhalen den vijand den weg te wijzen, noch door beloften noch door bedreigingen.

§ 126. Note the following translations of *woorden*:

619. *He did not live to be older* (hij werd niet ouder) than sixty.

620. Two years had passed since the accident, and *June had come round again* (het was weer Juni geworden).

621. As soon as it **became** generally **known** that the house had been purposely set on fire, the people could be hardly restrained from taking the law in their own hands, and killing the wretch who had brought this misery upon them.

THE INFINITIVE.

622. Miss C. has arrived, the great, rich Miss C., with seventy thousand pounds in the five per cents, whom, or I *had better say* which, her brothers adore.

623. You *had better* not **go** there yourself because, after what has taken place, I am bound to tell you that you will not be admitted.

624. I *had rather* **be** a slave and never **know** liberty again than **commit** such a crime.

625. I'd *sooner* **cut** my tongue out than **say** one word against her.

626. As the young gentleman who has just gone to bed is to be the hero of the following pages, we *had best* **begin** our account of him with his family history, which luckily is not very long.

627. She ought to have learned *better* by this time *than* **have** these hectoring, assuming airs.

628. *Rather than* **be** at the pains of hollowing out another, they buried him in the very grave that he had caused to be dug to receive the body of Silas Croft.

629. We *cannot but* (moeten wel) **hate** the man who has so pitilessly destroyed our happiness.

630. It would be easy to find women in their way more beautiful, with features more regular, and conforming more exactly to the accepted canons of female loveliness. But where **find** a face more striking than this?

631. Her son **become** a Protestant? After all the grief and trouble his wildness had occasioned her, Paul **forsake** his religion!

632. There was also honest Miss Mary. But why **speak** about her? It is probable that we shall not hear of her again from this moment to the end of time.

633. "You recollect the way?" inquired the Spirit. "**Remember** it!" cried Scrooge with fervour; "I could **walk** it blindfold."

634. Liberty as an abstraction is not worth a song. It is precious only for what it enables us **to be** and **do**.

§ 127. The infinitive *without to* is used:

1. after *I had better, I had rather, I had sooner, I had as soon* — instead of *I had best* we now generally find *I had better* —;

2. after *better than, rather than, sooner than, more than*;

3. after *I cannot (could not) but, I can but*, etc.;

4. in elliptical sentences, exclamations or interrogations, when we can supply one of the verbs *can, shall, should*, etc., with or without a subject;

5. to avoid the repetition of *to* when two or more infinitives are named in immediate succession; in this case emphasis requires the repetition.

CCCXCI. Er zijn gevaren in den strijd des levens, die zelfs de dapperste het best doet te ontvluchten.

CCCXCII. Het geheim is in allen gevalle verteld, en zij, die meenen, dat om deze reden het boek hun geene belangstelling meer kan inboezemen, doen beter het maar ter zijde te leggen.

CCCXCIII. Je moest maar liever zwijgen over het verledene; ik zal aan al diegenen, die onnoodige vragen doen, zeggen, dat zij beter deden zich met hun eigen zaken te bemoeien.

CCCXCIV. Liever dan hier te zitten en niets te doen, wil ik werken van den vroegen morgen tot den laten avond; ge-doemd te zijn tot niets doen is verschrikkelijk.

CCCXCV. Waarom woorden te spreken, die nooit eenig goed kunnen doen en zeer zeker aan sommigen van ons hoogst onaangenaam zullen zijn?

CCCXCVI. Hij zal waarschijnlijk niet te huis komen vóór 11 uur. — Niet thuis komen vóór dien tijd? Hoe jammer! Ik had hem zoo gaarne even willen spreken.

CCCXCVII. Liever dan hulp te vragen aan hem, die ons

eens in beleedigende woorden zijne hulp heeft
ik alle gevaren willen trotseeren.

CCCXCVIII. Iedereen ziet de wenschelijkheid
te zoeken, die al de door u opgenoemde goede
bezit; maar waar zulk eene vrouw te vinden!

CCCXCIX. Ik ben hier gekomen om te zien
wat er te zien en te hooren is, en ik wil ni
voordat alles is afgelopen.

CD. Zou hij zich tegen mijne bevelen verzetten
Onmogelijk; ik weet te goed, hoe gaarne hij z
ringsten mijner wenschen inwilligt.

CDI. Ik geloof, dat de stamboom, dien ik k
niet onderdoet voor dien van de meeste menschen,
er nogal trotsch op ook; maar ik spreek er nooit
gij"deed beter met mijn voorbeeld te volgen.

635. In one of these houses, which, to tell the
truth, was sadly time-worn and weather-beaten, there
a simple good-natured fellow.

636. Scrooge was very much dismayed to hear the
going on at this rate, and began to quake exceedingly

637. To see the dingy cloud come drooping down,
ring everything, one might have thought that Nature
hard by, and was brewing on a large scale.

638. To see him talking with Mrs. K. and the
daughters, you would not have thought that there was
thing wrong with him.

639. To hear him speak of all this, one would think
he had given at least some years' study to the subject

640. Whatever vices are represented by the stage, they
to be so marked and branded by the poet as not to
either laudable or amiable in the person who is tainted with

641. The Catholic priests supposed that most people
not of such piety as to deserve admission into a

ternal happiness, until they should have sustained a certain portion of punishment; but yet were not so wicked **as to deserve** instant and eternal condemnation.

642. He did it in such a manner **as to strengthen** in the Doctor's mind the idea that everything had been done on purpose.

643. At home he found nothing **to do** and nothing **to interest** him except the bottle.

644. We very often see that men pride themselves upon excellencies which others are slow **to perceive**.

645. There fell a faint buzzing on my ear, which I, being lrowsy and heavy **to sleep**, did not much listen to.

646. The untameable young creature was dōcile and gentle in Laura's presence; modest, natural, amiable, full of laughter and spirits, delightful **to see** and **to hear**.

647. The windows of their painting-room looked into a gigantic old garden, where there were ancient statues of the Imperial time, a babbling fountain, and noble orange-trees, with broad clustering leaves and golden balls of fruit, glorious **to look upon**.

648. He was not slow **to comprehend** why these words were addressed to him.

649. As far as I know you, you are a man quick **to think** and slow **to make** a decision.

650. Though I also thought that it was rather a silly speech **to make**, yet I could not say so, being so much younger than he is.

651. Our ship's boy was 12 years old; not a nice boy **to look at**, because he never washed, and was ignorant of a comb.

652. If you speak of it, the whole thing *is certain to fall through* (loopt zeker mis).

§ 128. The infinitive is used:

1. instead of an adverbial clause of condition (635) — note especially 637—639—;

2. instead of an adverbial clause of time (636);

3. instead of an adverbial clause of result (640—642);

P. ROORDA, *Dutch and English Compared*, I. 2nd edition.

4. Instead of a relative clause, as we say in Dutch: *Wat hij zegt is te vragen?* (643);
 5. The adjective, to denote in what the quality is apparent, as *he is quick to learn* (hij is snel te leren); the same class belong expressions like *he is silly* because the silliness is shown in the manner of his learning.
 6. After *is sure*, *is certain*, *is likely* instead of *is probably*, *probably*.

CDIII. Hij zei, dat het alleen de schuld van zijn *was*, dat hij zijn carrière *was misgelopen*, hetwelk *was an extremely rude thing* (hij was hem mis gegaan) *was het* (= zijnde) geheel onbegrijpelijk en boven dien *was niet verbazend vlug* (= langzaam in het vergeten).
 CDIV. *Ik leef niet gaarne gelooven* (= ik ben langzaam in het gelooven), dat zij om zulk eene *kleinigheid hebben twist*; er zal wel meer achter zitten.

CDV. *Ik ontstelde* (to start), toen ik hem zag (inf.); niemand bemerkte, dat ik verbleekte.

CDVI. Kalm van hoofd, helder van blik, vlug in het nemen van een besluit (to resolve), nog vlugger in het uitvoeren van overwinningen geweest op al zijne mededingers (van) iets anders weten, dat hij zou kunnen doen (inf.); dus deed hij, wat kon en was haar meer tot troost, dan hij had kunnen onderstellen.

CDVII. Als men hem hoort praten (inf.), zou men ken, dat hij veel ouder is, dan hij is; hij is trouwens vlug geweest in 't leeren en heeft meestal met volwas omgegaan.

CDIX. De Heer N. was altijd blijde hem te zien; nigmaal dacht hij zelfs *uit eigen beweging* (spontaneously)

ogen vriend en noodigde hem bij zich aan huis om ken-
maken met lieden, die hem waarschijnlijk van dienst
kunnen zijn.

L. Heb je ooit van iemand gehoord, die zóó dom
is hij niet weet, wat er in dergelijke gevallen gedaan
worden?

LI. De brief moest zóó geschreven worden, dat hij
het was om *onder de oogen van 't publiek te komen* (to
the public eye), indien dit te eeniger tijd noodzakelijk
blijken te zijn.

LII. Hij zal zeker slagen, indien hij steeds zijn doel
oogen houdt en al zijne krachten inspant het te be-

. It is better **for a municipal election to be decided**
political considerations than by considerations of social
on.

. When she had overtaken him, they both stopped,
he stood silent, waiting **for him to begin**.

. Tom was to arrive early in the afternoon, and there
another fluttering heart besides Maggie's when it was
nough **for the sound of the gig-wheels to be expected;**

Mrs. Tulliver had a strong feeling, it was fondness for
oy.

. The news it brought shocked him more than a week
e would have conceived it possible **for it to have done**.

. It requires a far higher degree of moral courage **for**
liar in action to leave the ranks under fire than would
him on with the rest to charge a battery.

. His tale, wild and improbable as it was, was too
tent and elaborate **for any school-boy to have invented**.

. This is an unusual compliment **for one author to**
to another.

a. Miss Deane was too popular and distinguished a mem-
f society in St. Oggs **for any attention to**
glected.

§ 129. As we say in Dutch *het is te moeilijk voor hem om te doen; het is niet goed voor den mensch alleen te zijn* instead of *het is te moeilijk, dan dan hij het zou kunnen doen; het is niet goed, dat de mensch alleen zij*, we often find in English a construction with *for* and *an infinitive* instead of a dependent clause. The Dutch translation often requires a dependent clause.

CDXIII. De vraag is, of het over 't algemeen niet veel beter is, dat *men* (a man) den mond houdt, als men zeker weet tegenover vooroordeelen geplaatst te zijn.

CDXIV. Als gij beproeven wilt zijn karakter te begrijpen, is het noodig, dat gij niet alleen zijne daden kent, maar ook weet, in hoeverre zij een gevolg zijn van uitwendige omstandigheden.

CDXV. Men zal zeer zeker trachten geruchten omtrent haar uit te strooien; maar door hare deugden staat zij te hoog, dan dat de laster haar zou kunnen bereiken.

CDXVI. Ik wil nog eenige dagen wachten en zien, of er niet een aangenamer werk is, waaraan ik mijne krachten zal kunnen beproeven.

CDXVII. Het is zeker iets heel ongewoons, dat een zoo geleerd man als hij de zaak verklaart op eene wijze, die zelfs voor oningewijden begrijpelijk is.

CDXVIII. Hij is zeer verlangend den dag en het uur te bepalen, *waarop* (for) de predikant *de verbintenis zal tot stand brengen* (to tie the knot) tusschen hem en het liefste meisje van de wereld.

CDXIX. Het gebeurt dikwijls, dat de menschen hun geld niet durven brengen naar spaarbanken of dergelijke instellingen. Het is *volstrekt niet ongewoon* (far from unprecedented), dat de landelijke kapitalist meer dan honderd pond bij zich aan huis heeft.

CDXX. De man moet krankzinnig zijn geweest; want het ligt niet in de menschelijke natuur, dat een vader zijn kind voor een zoo gering vergrijp op dergelijke wijze zou straffen.

CDXXI. Mij dunkt, het is onmogelijk, dat iemand maanden lang met een dergelijk plan (kan) rondloopen, zonder te trachten het te verwezenlijken.

CDXXII. Het is te goed, dan dat wij het zouden kunnen gelooven; het moet eene vergissing zijn.

660. We are all agreed that it must be done; the great question is **when, where, and how to do it, and what to give** as a reason for doing it.

661. Do you know of any means **by which to escape** this dreadful punishment.

662. You and I, however old, scolding and bankrupt — may we have in our last days a soft shoulder **on which to lean**, and a gentle hand to smoothe our pillows.

663. His anxiety was intense, and he could not find any argument **whereby to alleviate** it.

§ 130. When the subject is easily supplied by the context, we often use an infinitive after words like *how, where, when, by which* instead of a dependent clause, generally with *kunnen* or *zullen*.

CDXXIII. Ik wist niet, op welke manier ik hem van het gebeurde zou onderrichten.

CDXXIV. Hij zocht naar een veilig plaatsje, waarin hij zijn schat zou kunnen verbergen; maar geen plekje kon hij vinden, dat hem veilig genoeg toescheen.

CDXXV. Weet gij ook de eene of andere manier te bedenken, waarop wij aan zijne waakzaamheid zouden kunnen ontsnappen en onze vrijheid herwinnen?

CDXXVI. Hier is een boek, *dat, wanneer gij er een uur in leest* (in which, etc.), u zal aantoonen, dat gij ongelijk hebt.

§ 131. Note the use of the infinitive in the following sentences; the omission of the infinitive (672—673) is allowed only in familiar style.

664. There was a large edifice used as a kind of town hall, **so to speak**.

665. There was, **so to say**, not a farthing left.

666. She got a telegram this morning **to say** that her only sister, who lives near Leicester, has not many days to live.

667. I have written to my mother **to say** that I should start to-morrow.

668. **To begin with** (in de eerste plaats), my father would not hear of it.

669. The old lady presented a somewhat strange appearance. **To begin with**, she wore her bonnet all day long.

670. You might lodge fifty people in the house, I think, and have space **to spare** (over).

671. There were two little girls with little frocks, little trousers, long ringlets, blue eyes, and blue ribbons **to match** (van dezelfde kleur).

672. They have never been found either of them, and are not likely **to**.

673. Why am I going to write this book? Because Sir Henry Curtis and Captain Good asked me **to**.

674. She saw clearly how well she loved him, and it seemed folly **to try and conceal it** (te beproeven het te verbergen).

675. I hope they **will come and help** (zullen komen helpen) us.

CDXXVII. Hij zal trachten u te overreden; maar bedenk, hoeveel van uwe standvastigheid afhangt; niet alleen het geluk van u en de uwen, maar van ons allen.

CDXXVIII. „Wij zullen nooit onze toestemming geven, dat gij naar die partij gaat.” „*Ik will niet eens* (I don't even want to),” riep ze en verliet toornig de kamer.

CDXXIX. Het spijt ons nu, dat wij de uitnoodiging hebben aangenomen; want wij schijnen niet erg welkom te zijn. In de eerste plaats was er niemand aan het station om ons af te halen; maar dat kan eene vergissing geweest zijn.

CDXXX. Zij droeg een donkerbruine japon, eenen hoed met donkerbruin lint en schoenen van dezelfde kleur.

CDXXXI. Zijt gij niet verbaasd te hooren, dat wij in de stad geweest zijn zonder u te bezoeken? Wij waren gaarne gekomen; maar wij hadden geen oogenblik over.

CDXXXII. Kan ik het niet gaan halen? Of hebt gij het zoo goed weggeborgen, dat niemand het kan vinden, behalve gij?

676. She *felt* herself to be an impediment to his career in the world.

677. If a tyrant, he was an affectionate tyrant. His wife *felt* him to be so. His servants, his parish, and his school, all *felt* him to be so.

678. Did you ever *know* me to go to her without you when there was a chance of your coming?

679. "Dearest," she said, "I never *knew* a word that was true to come from his mouth, or a word that was false from yours."

680. She feared that she should not make any impression upon him, there being so many others **whom** she *saw* to be gayer, sprightlier, prettier than herself.

681. The Scriptures had opened their secrets to Bunyan, and he *had seen* **them to be** in very truth the keys of the kingdom of heaven.

§ 132. In the accusative with infinitive construction the infinitive *with to* is found after *to see* and *to feel* when in Dutch the infinitive cannot be used: *ik zag, dat zij mooi was*, not *ik zag haar mooi zijn*; *ik voelde, dat het onmogelijk was*, not *ik voelde het onmogelijk zijn*. After *to know* (zien, hooren) the

infinitive *with to* may be used even when in Dutch we have an infinitive.

Note that in this case after *to see* and *to feel* we generally use a dependent clause, as *I saw that she was beautiful*.

CDXXXIII. In dit moeilijke geval wendde hij zich tot zijne vrouw, die, naar hij dikwijls gezien had, een grooten invloed op den jongen man uitoefende.

CDXXXIV. Zij gevoelde, dat het volkomen waar was. Zij had alleen aan zichzelf gedacht en er nooit naar gestreefd hem gelukkig te maken.

CDXXXV. Ik zag dadelijk, dat het onmogelijk was. Mijn vader zou nooit te bewegen zijn het huis te verlaten, waar aan al zijne herinneringen verbonden waren.

682. My wild hurrah rang through the silent woods, and I **stood listening** to the echo that reverberated again and again, until all was hushed.

§ 133. *Ik stond te luisteren, zat te lezen*, etc. cannot be translated literally; the translation runs *I stood and listened, I stood listening, I sat reading, I was reading*, etc.

CDXXXVI. Toen ik binnentrad, zat zij bij de tafel te schrijven, terwijl haar jongste broertje op den grond lag te lezen.

CDXXXVII. Ik geloof, dat hij bij de deur heeft staan luisteren, en alles gehoord heeft, wat wij hebben afgesproken. In dat geval weet iedereen het, voordat er een uur verlopen is; want hij *kan volstrekt niet* (never can) zwijgen.

THE GERUND.

683. The sun shines to-day as he did when he first began **shining**.

684. He instantly began **to collect** provisions, to throw up works, and to make preparations for sustaining a siege.

685. Cranmer declined **giving** any opinion upon the king's divorce.

686. The poor little thing never stopped **crying** until its mother had returned.

687. I intended to call (= **calling**) upon him the first thing to-morrow morning.

§ 134. After some verbs such as *to begin, to continue, to cease, to stop, to delay, to refuse*, etc., the direct object is often a gerund instead of an infinitive.

CDXXXVIII. Zoodra het ophield met sneeuwen, begonnen de kinderen een pad te maken van het huis naar den koestal, een afstand van ongeveer twintig meter.

CDXXXIX. Zijne vrouw ging voort met hem te verwijten, dat hij door zijne koppigheid zichzelf en zijn huisgezin ongelukkig had gemaakt.

CDXL. Zij stellen voor dadelijk bij ons te komen in plaats van in Juli of Augustus; hebt gij ook eenig bezwaar, *vrouw* (my dear)? Ik niet.

688. Every one was so busy **fighting**, that there was no person to write down the history.

689. I have been very busy **in arranging** my library.

. § 135. After *I am busy* (ik ben bezig, ik heb het druk met) the gerund is used with or without *in*.

CDXLI. Ik was den geheelen morgen druk bezig geweest met toebereidselen te maken voor ons vertrek, toen plotseling ons jongste kind ernstig ongesteld werd.

CDXLII. Ik heb het zoo druk gehad met mijne papieren in orde te brengen, dat ik van morgen geen oogenblik tijd heb kunnen vinden om de drukproeven na te zien.

690. No doubt the young lady was ready, as every well-elevated young Frenchwoman should be, to accept a husband **of her parents' choosing**.

691. I am here to-night to warn you that you have yet a chance and hope of escaping my fate — a chance and hope **of my procuring**.

692. These trees are **of my own planting**; I will never suffer them to be cut down while I live.

§ 136. A relative clause is sometimes replaced by a gerund preceded by *of*; the same construction following the verb *to be*, is found instead of the passive voice.

CDXLIII. Dit zijn bezwaren, *die uit uw eigen brein voortkomen* (= die gijzelf gemaakt hebt); zeg mij nu, welke bezwaren er werkelijk zijn.

CDXLIV. Deze schilderijen zijn door ons zelf geteekend. Wij zullen er de wanden onzer kamer mee versieren.

CDXLV. Zou je een man willen hebben, dien je vriendin voor je heeft uitgezocht? — Ja wel, waarom niet, als mijne keuze toevallig met de hare overeenkomt.

693. His **capacity for preaching** was undoubted, his peculiar fitness for his place at B. unquestionable.

694. The **taste for travelling** has much increased; it is hardly uncommon for an Englishman to go to the Rocky Mountains, or Peru'.

695. Am I so different from other people? — Yes, **different in not eating** the doctor's dinners when they are offered you, different in your indifference for them.

696. Mary saw no **reason for staying away**, and Lord C. found an additional **reason for going**.

697. Mary might marry well, and £ 20.000 would probably assist her **in doing so**.

698. We do no more than our duty **in calling attention** to such a case at this.

699. He had no **difficulty in obtaining** the evidence which was required.

700. Dickens became great **in painting** the virtues of the lower orders.

701. A conference was held at the house of the banker for the **purpose of making** the necessary arrangements.

702. Bunyan's **object in teaching** was to persuade people to give up their sins.

§ 137. In sentences like *I have a reason for it, I see no difficulty in this, On this I left the room*, we may use a gerundial expression instead of *it, this*, etc.: *I have a reason for doing it, I see no difficulty in speaking to him about it, On hearing this, I left the room*. The Dutch translation requires a dependent clause, or an infinitive phrase.

CDXLVI. Zij verschillen van hunne naasten alleen *hierin* (in), dat zij geen 'huichelaars' zijn; zij doen in 't openbaar, wat anderen in 't geheim doen.

CDXLVII. Het is veel waarschijnlijker, dat, *toen* (on) hij bevond, hoe weinig bedreigingen tegen iemand van uw karakter vermochten, hij in stilte is vertrokken.

CDXLVIII. Clive's betrekkingen hadden uitstekende redenen om zich te verheugen over zijne terugkomst; zijne zakken waren goed gevuld, en met kwistige hand deelde hij zijne schatten uit, waar hij zag, dat hulp noodig was.

CDXLIX. Beiden stortten tranen, *toen* (at) zij scheidden; maar de tranen van een van hen waren spoedig gedroogd.

CDL. Er bestaat inderdaad weinig grond om te gelooven, dat, indien de dood hem niet zoo jong had weggenomen, hij een groot schrijver zou zijn geworden.

CDLI. In 1535 *lieten* Bisschop Fisher en Sir Thomas More op het schavot *het leven* (to perish), *omdat* (for) zij weigerden den eed van suprematie af te leggen, en terzelfder tijd wer-

den Protestanten naar den brandstapel gesleurd, *om* zij spraken tegen de sacramenten van de Roomsche kerk.

CDLII. De waarde, die *wij* aan iets hechten, is evenredigheid met de moeite, die het ons gekost heeft (in) het te verkrijgen of te behouden.

CDLIII. Hij *had zich* door zijnen toorn *laten verleiden* (betrayed . . . into) den wensch uit te drukken de schuld aan te geven.

CDLIV. Herhaalde pogingen waren gedaan *om* (at) binnen te komen door het venster van de visitekamer uitzag op het terras.

CDLV. Ik heb er belang bij *om* (in) de eerste te deze boodschap overbrengt; heb ik niet al mijne krachten gespannen om hem aan deze betrekking te helpen?

CDLVI. Toen de waard de kamer had verlaten niet nalaten mijnen vriend fluisterend mijn bange vermaning te deelen. Het volgende oogenblik speet het neder.

CDLVII. Het huis werd *in de wandeling* (pop) Witte Huis genoemd, *daar* (from) de voorgevel bleef met een soort van wit pleister.

CDLVIII. Ik kan *het* u niet kwalijk nemen (to t) (for) gij hem verdedigd hebt; in uw geval zou ik ook hetzelfde hebben gedaan, welke ook de gevolgen waren geweest.

CDLIX. Hij gaf groote sommen aan de Kerk en schillende liefdadige instellingen, *zonder twijfel om* (by way, no doubt, of) zijn geweten te bevredigen.

CDLX. Er is niets merkwaardigs in, (dat) hij barmhertig om er met vader over te spreken, die van deze zaak veel meer weet, dan één van zijn andere kennissen.

PARTICIPLES.

703. **Determined**, however, to persevere, the man pursued his political intrigues.

704. The right thus **acquired** was grossly abused; but the exercise of it, **being expected**, created at first but little alarm.

705. Meanwhile **continuing** the organization of his forces, he filled up the old regiments with new levies, and formed fresh battalions.

706. They thwarted him, **humouring** the caprice and insolence of the populace, and **meddling** with affairs foreign to the matter in hand.

707. **Though giving** no claim to pardon, still less to reward, this was the first good action performed by him.

708. He had been taken prisoner **when engaged** in some exploit which was contrary to the usages of war.

709. They discovered an immense glacier, since **named** the Humboldt glacier, which, **as described** by Dr. Kane, rose like a solid glass wall, three hundred feet above the level of the water.

710. Even intelligent Londoners talked of London **as containing** several millions of souls, whereas in 1685 the whole population of England amounted to about five millions.

§ 138. A participial construction often takes the place of a dependent clause; it may be headed by *as*, *though*, etc.

CDLXI. Het goud kan^a, (als het) behoorlijk gebruikt¹ (wordt), zegening (pl.) verspreiden en het geluk der stervelingen bevorderen; maar wanneer (het wordt) opgegaard of misbruikt, maakt het de menschen ongelukkig.

CDLXII. Als roofdieren jong gevangen worden, kunnen zij worden getemd; maar zij verliezen nooit geheel en al hun wilden aard.

CDLXIII. Terwijl de heer N. *stevig zat te ontbijten* (to make an excellent breakfast), las hij de courant met een onbezorgd gemoed en een vroolijk gelaat.

CDLXIV. Zoolang wij in de wereld blijven, zijn wij onderhevig aan tallooze verzoekingën, die, indien wij er naar luisteren (pass.), ons zullen doen afwijken van het pad, dat ons is voorgeschreven.

CDLXV. Ofschoon ik overtuigd was, dat ieder woord, hem gesproken, slechts had gediend om zijne **gedacht** verbergen, moest ik toch zijn redenaarstalent **bewondere**

CDLXVI. Daar het ministerie bestond uit **mannen**, die besloten waren hun gezag tot hun eigen voordeel en t-
vrediging van *persoonlijke* (private) vijandschap aan te we-
kon hun bestuur nooit tot zegen strekken voor het arm-
teisterde land.

711. The arctic animals show less beauty of colouring than those of warmer climates, *white and different shades of* principally **supplying** the place of the more brilliant tints.

712. According to Bunyan, God's law demanded a perfect obedience, *eternal death being* the punishment for the lightest breach of it.

713. *The royal power being* overthrown, a republic of government was substituted in its place.

714. "I will reply to you," said the hermit, "with my finger, *it being* against my rule to speak by word; signs can answer the purpose."

715. The proposition was put to the vote, and it **appearing** to be only one dissentient voice, Mr. N. was duly elected.

716. *The battle gained*, we advanced, and within a few days all the principal towns were in our hands.

717. *The defence of his realm* thus **provided for** him, Alfred devoted himself to its good government.

718. *All things considered*, you may think yourself fortunate that you are still in the land of the living.

719. Roughly **speaking**, there are two demarcations which mainly divide the community in these places.

720. We were not disappointed with the castle we arrived there; and that is saying a good deal, **considering** the anticipations we had formed of it.

§ 139. A group consisting of a noun or pronoun in the nominative, and a present participle, may be equivalent to an adverbial clause; it is called nominative absolute or independent participial construction because it does not depend on its subject on the rest of the sentence: *Weather permitting, I will come* (the subject of the first part of the sentence is *weather*, that of the second is *I*). Occasionally *there* places the subject; see 715.

Sometimes the present participle itself is omitted, see 716—8, sometimes the nominative, when the dependent clause or phrase in Dutch contains a past participle or an infinitive, or when the subject is *men* (719—720).

CDLXVII. Gij behoeft niet te vreezen, dat hij zal verdwaalen, daar de kinderen ieder hoekje van het bosch kennen.

CDLXVIII. Daar er een oproer in de stad was uitgebroken, verdeelde de burgemeester het noodzakelijk de hulp der *militairen* (military) in te roepen.

CDLXIX. Eigenlijk gezegd is er maar één ding, dat een rijk man in zulke omstandigheden kan doen; hij moet zooinig mogelijk leven en trachten zijne schulden af te doen.

CDLXX. Als men in aanmerking neemt, door wien het huis is gebouwd, is het niet zoo geriefelijk ingericht, als men het kunnen verwachten.

CDLXXI. De gedaante vóór hem bleef eenige oogenblikken staan en scheen te luisteren, want zij wendde zich rechts en links, (terwijl) het gelaat bedekt (was) met het zwarte schuwelijke masker, dat dikwijls door dieven wordt gedragen.

CDLXXII. Ons leven kan ieder oogenblik een einde nemen, en de beste vriend; menschelijkerwijze gesproken moet er een einde komen, vóór de zon weer is verzezen.

CDLXXIII. Toen de oude dame bij het vuur in slaap was gevallen, schoof de jonge man zijnen stoel dicht bij dien van de jonge meisje, en fluisterende maakten zij plannen voor de toekomst, die hun niets anders dan geluk scheen te bieden.

CDLXXIV. Te oordeelen naar hetgeen ons hieromtrent is

medegedeeld, geloof ik, dat wij niet beter kunnen doen den jongen naar eene dier scholen te zenden.

CDLXXV. Toegegeven, dat dit alles waar is, (dan) ha toch, dunkt mij, geheel anders moeten handelen, indien hem ernst was geweest zijnen vader met het plan te verzoe

CDLXXVI. (Nadat) alle schulden (waren) afbetaald, den wij nog 400 pond over van de som, die oom ons ha gelaten.

CDLXXVII. Als men (de) vermeerdering der (= van) b king *in aanmerking neemt* (to allow for), was het *sterfte* (deaths) verleden week ongeveer 200 beneden het gemid getal.

721. It is not uncommon to find several families cro together in the smallest possible space, where they eat, d and sleep, **with fish and flesh lying** all around, and **reposing** on every side.

722. The boy awoke from his reverie to find himself i dull play-ground, **with its high walls shutting out** every but the cold, grey English sky.

723. We shivered all church-time in the long, bare, l pew, **with the draught** from the door **playing** round our little legs.

724. Thither have been carried, **without one mourner lowing**, the bleeding relics of men who had been the cap of armies.

725. What do you call this? Bed-curtains? You mean to say you took 'em down, rings and all, **with lying** there?

§ 140. The independent participial construction allows preposition — especially *with* — to be placed at the head that there is an accusative instead of a nominative. Dutch translation requires a dependent clause.

CDLXXXVIII. Hoe konden wij over de zaak spreken, t

with) mijn broer in de kamer was en luisterde naar ieder woord, dat er gezegd werd.

CDLXXIX. Op eenigen afstand was een aardig dorpje, *daarboven* (with, etc.) de rook uit de schoorsteen der hutjes in kleine wolkjes hing.

CDLXXX. Er was niets, dat wij niet gaarne hadden willen doen, terwijl zij toekeek en ons nu en dan met een glimlachje aanmoedigde.

CDLXXXI. Hoe kondt gij verwachten, dat het niet zou geschieden, zonder dat er iets gedaan werd om het te veranderen?

CDLXXXII. Toen Paul eene deur voorbijkwam, die op een sier stond, riep eene stem van binnen: „Is dat Dombey?” Toen (on) Paul antwoordde: „Ja, juffrouw,” want hij herkende de stem als die van Mejuffrouw B., zeide Mejuffrouw B.: „Kom binnen, Dombey.” En hij ging naar binnen.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

726. Their household **was**, to all appearance, **being conducted** upon much the same principles as heretofore.

727. Once a week a board meeting is held, at which the landlord hears a full account of all that **is being done** by the assesses of his property.

728. New sources of mineral wealth **are** ever and anon **being discovered** beneath the surface of the soil.

729. Above him are the same peaceful moon and silent stars which he saw when he **was being hurried** through the desolate levels of Yorkshire.

730. Next morning the unhappy youth **was missing**, and all inquiries proving fruitless, he was given up for lost.

§ 141. To express continuance, or frequent repetition, the passive voice may be used in the progressive form. The

gerundial construction is seldom found in every-day English, except in a few standing expressions, as *it is missing*.

CDLXXXIII. „Zullen wij morgen het museum gaan bezichtigen?” — „Het zal waarschijnlijk niet open zijn; want het wordt aanmerkelijk veranderd en uitgebreid, zoodat het wel voor het publiek gesloten zal zijn.”

CDLXXXIV. Toen ik dezen zomer op reis was en in 't midden van Juni door Beieren ging, zag ik, dat het koren daar overal reeds werd afgemaaid.

CDLXXXV. Deze woorden maken een gedeelte uit van den grooten *woordentoevoer* (supply of words), waarmede onze taal in dezen tijd verrijkt wordt.

CDLXXXVI. Er wordt altijd over ons geklaagd, hoeveel moeite wij ons ook geven om te voldoen aan de strenge eischen, die ons gesteld worden.

CDLXXXVII. Terwijl alles *in orde gebracht wordt* (to be arranged), kunnen wij onze bureu en verdere kennissen vaarwel zeggen; dan kunnen wij nog met den trein van 5 uur vertrekken.

731. Last year one of the shares **sold** for 91.000 pounds.

732. The building 'of the new hospital was a subject of conversation *that would* ¹⁾ **keep** (dat tot later bewaard kon worden); it could always be taken up again at the same point, and exactly in the same condition.

733. I do not know how it is, but it appears to me that grog **drinks** better out of glass than out of metal.

§ 142. A passive meaning is sometimes expressed by an intransitive verb, of course in the active voice.

CDLXXXVIII. Het boek laat zich heel goed lezen; de stijl is ver boven het middelmatige, en de inhoud is boeiend ge-

¹⁾ See § 118.

beg om met belangstelling de ontknooping te gemoet te zien.

CDLXXXIX. De rogge wordt op 't.oogenblik zoo goedkoop verkocht, dat ik u sterk kan aanraden nu uwe inkoop te doen; als gij eene maand of zoo wacht, zal ze duurder zijn.

734. It is very hard **to be wrecked** nearly within sight of the port to which the ship is bound.

735. A violent crash was heard. Looking out of window, we saw that a tall oak at the bottom of the garden had **been blown down**.

736. She would have **been drowned** if one of the sailors had not jumped into the boiling surf, and saved her life at the risk of his own.

737. When a gentleman's hat **is blown off**, and the poor victim is running after it, vainly trying to look dignified, he seldom fails to afford amusement to the lookers-on.

738. We rowed back; but as I held out my arms to catch my sister, such numbers leaped in that the boat **was upset**.

739. In little more than twenty minutes the house **was burnt down**.

§ 143. A few intransitive verbs in Dutch correspond to passive verbs in English.

CDXC. Zoodra ik de deur had geopend, *woei* mijne kaars *út* (to be blown out), en daar stond ik in het duister, terwijl de voetstappen al nader en nader kwamen.

CDXCI. De boot sloeg om, toen zij dicht bij den oever was. Allen bereikten evenwel zwemmende het land, behalve *én*, die jammerlijk verdronk.

CDXCII. Ik heb slechts ééns schipbreuk geleden; maar toen heb ik ook alles verloren, wat ik op dat oogenblik bezat.

740. Samuel Johnson **was distinguished** through life by the strongest spirit of personal independence.

741. About the battle of Gabhra, said to have been fought
A. D. 284, **is gathered** the main body of old Gaelic tradition.

742. Much of it is not true, **unless I am** more deeply
in you than I ever was in any man.

743. He resolved **to be revenged** on the authors of
great crime.

744. I **am** not in the least **ashamed** of what I have done
and would do it again under the same circumstances.

§ 144. Some reflexive verbs in Dutch correspond to
sive verbs in English.

CDXCIII. Ofschoon ik mij niet meer verbaas over wat
doet, moet ik toch zeggen, dat hij dezen keer zichzelf
troffen heeft.

CDXCIV. Ik ergerde mij over zijne onverschilligheid, want
omdat ik zag, dat zijn vader zich alle opofferingen getroost
om hem een goede opvoeding te geven.

CDXCV. Hij, die zich vroeger had onderscheiden door
scherpzinigheid, was nu geheel een kind geworden (of)
dankbaar voor een stuk speelgoed, dat men hem bracht.

CDXCVI. Waarom zou ik boos op hem zijn? Hij
toch niet baten; maar ik bedroef mij ten zeerste over
weigering, omdat alle hoop nu voor mijnen zoon vervloet.

CDXCVII. Indien ik mij niet zeer vergis, heeft hij
teren op de tafel in uwe slaapkamer laten liggen; kijkt
eens, of het daar niet is.

§ 145. Note the use of the passive or active in the
ing sentences:

745. His aspect indicated *in a manner not to be met*
(op onmiskenbare wijze) capacity equal to the most arduous
enterprises, and fortitude not to be shaken by reverses or defeat.

746. Here is your overcoat and your hat — here!
along, there is no time **to lose** (= we have no time to
lose).

747. The "Cave of Harmony" was then kept by the celebrated Hoskins, among whose friends we were proud to count.

748. She had been lying there, quiet and motionless, for an hour or more, ever since the tea-things had been taken away — at Holy Hill *they have tea* (wordt er thee gedronken) at half past four.

THE REFLEXIVE VERB.

§ 146. The reflexive verb in Dutch is often not reflexive in English.

1. Whenever an opportunity *offered* (zich aanbieden), I tried to draw him into conversation, but he would not speak out his mind.

2. Have you not yet *sent in your papers* (zich aangeven)?

3. He *arrogated* (zich aanmatigen) dominion over the princes of all the neighbouring countries.

4. He has no claim on it, he only *arrogates it to himself* (zich aanmatigen).

5. You must not *take it so much to heart* (zich aantrekken).

6. He would not have *minded* (zich aantrekken) in the least.

7. You should not *condescend to associate* (zich afgeven) with such people.

8. His was the one figure that *stood out bright* (zich helder afteekenen) against the darkness when England lay trodden under foot by Norman conquerors.

9. The spiders were especially a subject of speculation with Maggie. She *wondered* (zich afvragen) if they had any relations outside the mill, for in that case there must be a painful difficulty in their intercourse.

10. At first I felt strongly inclined to laugh, but when I saw how seriously annoyed my friend appeared, I *changed my mind* (zich bedenken).

11. I could hardly *keep down my anger* (*my impatience*, etc.) (zich bedwingen).

12. He soon *recollected himself* (zich beheerschen, tot zichzelf komen) after that sudden burst of anger.

13. He *complained of* (zich beklagen over) his own folly.

14. I don't *care for* (zich bekommeren om) riches.

15. I don't *care a fig for* it (zich bekommeren om).

16. If he had not *meddled with it* (zich met iets bemoeien), all would have been well.

17. He *gloried in* (zich beroemen op) the evil he had committed.

18. The sun *moves* (zich bewegen) round the earth.

19. The Lord *have mercy upon us* (zich erbarmen over iemand).

20. Nobody *has pity on me* (zich erbarmen over iemand).

21. As soon as we *had got ready* (zich gereed maken) for our journey, we started.

22. To-morrow we shall *feast upon* (zich te goed doen aan) these delicacies.

23. It was a pleasure to see how the boy *enjoyed his dinner* (*supper, breakfast, etc.*) (zich te goed doen aan).

24. *She broke down* (zij kon zich niet langer goed houden), and burst into a violent fit of weeping.

25. I hope that you have *recovered* (zich herstellen) from the shock.

26. After that first interview they *held* (zich houden) somewhat aloof for many days.

27. He is said to have *made away with himself* (zich van kant maken).

28. They had to *put up with* (zich laten welgevalen) all kinds of humiliations.

29. The king *encamped* (zich legeren) on one bank, while the barons covered a marshy flat on the other.

30. All at once she *seized upon* (zich meester maken van) the child, and ran away with it.

31. He came in and *mingled* (zich mengen) with the audience.

32. If you don't *take great pains* (zich veel moeite geven), you will never attain eminence.

33. The lion *lay down* (zich nederleggen) at the foot of the tree, and there he kept watch all night.

34. I will not *abide by* (zich neerleggen bij) the decision of the court.

35. In this large library I felt *much* (ongeveer) as a man may feel who gazes upon a feast to which he must not *sit down* (zich nederzetten).

36. I did not know that they had *settled* (zich nederzetten) in America.

37. If you *practise* (zich oefenen) for three years, Sir, you may know something of the game.

38. I suddenly *turned* (zich omwenden), and looked him full in the face.

39. The Queen *conversed* (zich onderhouden) for some moments with each of her guests.

40. He cannot yet *pay his own way* (zichzelf onderhouden).

41. You can never { *earn a livelihood* } (zich onderhouden)
 { *gain a living* }

in that way.

42. Will you *presume* (zich onderstaan) to offer an explanation, all the great scholars of our time and of former times saying there cannot be any?

43. He would not *submit* (zich onderwerpen) to our authority.

44. Why do not you *put off* (zich ontdoen van) your coat?

45. She *had pity on* (zich ontfermen over) the poor children and gave them something to eat.

46. She could not *refrain* (zich onthouden) from putting the question there and then.

47. This time I shall *abstain* (zich onthouden) from reading him a lecture.

48. Flowers *open* (zich openen) in the day, and *shut* (zich sluiten) at night.

49. I do not know where he *is* (zich ophouden).

50. Let us *stay* (zich ophouden) here for some days.

51. Sugar *dissolves* (zich oplossen) in water.
52. The vague project — seeking one's fortune in London — *resolved itself* (zich oplossen) into small realities, not quite so pleasant.
53. He *indulged* (zich overgeven) in vain pleasures.
54. I fear the town will soon be forced *to surrender* (zich overgeven).
55. You will have *to conform* (zich richten) to these rules.
56. I could not *put up with* (zich schikken in) it.
57. He would never *comply with* (zich schikken naar) our wishes.
58. I should *have been guilty* (zich schuldig maken aan) of similar deceit, if I had had to defend a woman who had been true and affectionate to me.
59. The overthrow was so terrible that all hope of saving Kent seems to have been abandoned, and it was only on its southern shore that the Britons *held their ground* (zich staande houden).
60. Heathenism still *held its own* (zich staande houden) in the western woodlands.
61. When you *run into debt* (zich in schulden steken), you give to another power over your liberty.
62. A large stream *winds* (zich slingeren) through the meadows.
63. I do not think I could have *kept counsel* ¹⁾ (zich stil houden) so well in his place.
64. I will *hold my peace* (zich stil houden) if you promise to do this.
65. The epidemic shows evident signs of *spreading* (zich uitbreiden).
66. You had better not *give an opinion about* (zich uitlaten over) it.
67. I had gone up the river nearly two miles, when, coming to a little stream which *empties* (zich uitstorten) into the larger, I turned into it to explore its course.

¹⁾ We also say *to keep one's (own) counsel*.

at full length before the fire, *stretching himself*
road *stretches* (zich uitstrekken) across the

exhausted and chilled with cold, and can *hold*
(uden) no longer.

clan attained to so much power that the other
united (zich vereenigen) against it.

parties *united* (zich vereenigen) to sign the petition.

was there only for the purpose of *ascertaining* (zich
whether a descent on England was practicable.

mountain *rises* (zich verheffen) above the clouds.

all *declared* (zich verklaren) for the king.

revelled (zich verkneuteren) in the idea.

how can I *rely upon* (zich verlaten op) his promises!

the tyrant *gloated on* (zich verlustigen in) the pains
victim.

He *delights* (zich verlustigen) in the confusion he has

Dare (zich vermeten) you look an honest man in the face?

He should never have *stooped* (zich vernederen) to
y.

He is always *making mistakes in his sums* (zich ver-
en).

You must have *made a mistake in the calculation* (zich
kenen).

He did not *stir* (zich verroeren), and sat as still as a
e.

We could not *procure* (zich verschaffen) admittance to
astle.

I never *make a slip in writing* (zich verschrijven).

That is a slip of the pen (daar hebt gij u verschreven).

As soon as the crowd had *dispersed* (zich verspreiden),
ventured to leave the hotel.

The news *spread* (zich verspreiden) like wildfire all
gh the country.

90. *That is a slip of the tongue, I suppose* (Gij hebt u zeker versproken)?

91. I have *made* so many *slips in speaking* (zich verspreken).

92. He will be angry when you *presume* (zich verstouten) to contradict him.

93. The schoolmaster *condescended* (zich verwaardigen) to shake hands with me.

94. I *wonder* (zich verwonderen) he did not come back.

95. They soon *assembled* (zich verzamelen) in great numbers.

96. All the troops will *gather* (zich verzamelen) here.

97. The Irish members will, of course, *oppose* (zich verzetten tegen) the bill.

98. When did he *settle* (zich vestigen) here?

99. "I'll not stir an inch all day," said he, *settling himself* (zich goed plaatsen; gaan zitten, alsof men van plan is, niet gauw weer op te staan).

100. I have *made up my mind* (zich voornemen) to stay here, and stay here I will.

101. *Picture* (zich voorstellen) my astonishment when he suddenly stood before me.

102. They *made merry* (zich vroolijk maken) over the way in which he had done it.

§ 147. Note the following translations of English reflective verbs:

I am afraid the boy will *overeate himself* (zijne maag overladen).

They *betook themselves* (zijne toevlucht nemen) to the woods.

She *prides herself on* (roem dragen op) the disinterestedness of her efforts.

I *avail myself of* (te baat nemen) this opportunity to return my best thanks to the author.

To *set myself straight with my conscience* (om mijn geweten gerust te stellen), I endeavoured to reason with him.

The storm had soon *spent itself* (uitwoeden).

In various ways they *interest themselves in* (belang stellen in, zich interesseeren voor) the pursuits and amusements of their people.

Maggie said to herself that she would stay up there, and *starve herself* (zich laten verhongeren).

His temper seemed to crave the bleak wet air of the cold streets, and he did not *hurry himself* (haast maken, zich haasten, zich overijlen).

He *bestirred himself* (druk in de weer zijn) to put everything in readiness.

I cannot *bring myself* (er toe komen) to be angry with him.

It was a great misfortune, but, placed as I was, I could *not help myself* (er niets aan doen).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

749. "Long live the King!" he shouted, and thousands repeated these words.

750. Luther defended his doctrines before the Emperor Charles V., six electors, and a large and august assembly, concluding with the words: "Here I stand, I cannot act otherwise, God **help** me! Amen."

751. Scrooge knew how to keep his Christmas well, if any man alive possessed the knowledge. **May** that **be** truly said of us, and all of us! And so, as Tiny Tim observed, God **bless** us, every one!

752. **Be** their talents what they may, if they are not virtuous, they will do more harm than good.

753. **Come** what may, I shall never submit to the tyranny of this man.

754. **Couldn't** I take them all at once, and have it over?

755. The case of this unhappy man **might** be my own.

756. They **would** not have done it, if they had paid the least regard to the feeble state of her health; they **would** have stayed outside.

757. I **should** have sent for you, if you had not been at home by that time.

§ 148. The subjunctive mood may be used in principal sentences:

1. in expressing a wish (749—751);
2. in denoting a concession (752—753).

In both cases the compound form with *may* often replaces the simple form (751).

Sentences such as *Ik deed het, als ik in jou plaats was*, require *should* and *would* in the principal sentence (756—757), except when the latter contains one of the verbs *can*, *may*, etc. (754—755).

CDXCVIII. God geve u geduld en sterkte, om niet onder deze beproevingen te bezwijken.

CDXCIX. Toen de koning op den troon was gezeten, bogen al de edelen zich voor hun *wettigen* (liege) vorst en riepen: „Lang leve Koning Richard!”

D. (Zij mochten) doen, wat ze (maar) wilden; maar ik had mij vast voorgenomen dergelijke wenschen nooit meer in te willigen.

DI. Zij konden u die belofte wel gegeven hebben, indien zij gewild hadden; want het ligt in hunne macht haar te vervullen.

DII. Onze Vader, *die* (which) in de hemel(en) zijt! uw naam worde geheiligd. Uw koninkrijk kome. Uw wil *geschiede* (to be done), *gelijk in den hemel, alzoo ook op de aarde* (in earth as it is in heaven).

DIII. Wat er ook van kome (= Kome, wat mag), ik zal mij nooit onderwerpen aan een dergelijke dwingelandij.

DIV. Hij had gemakkelijk kunnen zien, dat ik bezig was, zoodat ik hem niet onmiddellijk kon helpen; dat zou mij veel verdriet bespaard hebben.

DV. Ik ging niet heen, indien mij op die onbeschofte manier de deur gewezen werd; ik bleef, tot zij alles gehoord hadden, wat ik hun te zeggen had.

DVI. Ik had hem graag iets gegeven; maar hij was al weg, toen ik terugkwam, na eenig geld te hebben gehaald.

DVII. Ik kon het niet doen, oom, al boden zij mij ook al de schatten der wereld; ik zou het oude huis, waarin wij allen geboren zijn en zulk een gelukkige jeugd hebben doorgebracht, nooit kunnen verkoopen.

DVIII. Je hadt er plezier aan gehad, als je de kinderen hadt zien spelen; ze waren zoo gelukkig, dat ze weer bij elkaar waren.

758. The poor sailor only breathed a wish that he **might see** his wife before he died.

759. The Puritans, even in the depths of the dungeons to which the Queen had sent them, prayed, and with no simulated fervour, that she **might be kept** from the dagger of the assassin.

760. I wish it **were** (= **might be**) spring all the year round; for in my opinion it is the most agreeable season.

761. He desired that all those who did not propose to fight, **should leave** the field before the battle began.

762. The *sepoy*s (inlandsch soldaat) came to Clive to propose that all the grain **should be given** to the Europeans.

763. Clive consented to treat, though he expressed his regret that things **should not be concluded** in so glorious a manner as he could have wished.

764. Galileo, the great astronomer, feared that he **might be kept** prisoner all his life if he did not revoke his astronomical assertions.

765. He began to doubt whether both he and the world around him **were** not bewitched.

766. Who can tell whither he **may be driven**, or when he **may return**, or whether it **may ever be** his lot to revisit the scenes of his childhood?

767. He has been my companion in the task for the day, and it is fit he **should share** in its amusements.

768. It was better that, at the time of the crusades, the rude inhabitant of the North **should visit Italy** and the East as a pilgrim than that he **should never see anything** of those squalid cabins and uncleared woods amidst which he was born.

§ 149. In dependent clauses the simple form of the subjunctive mood is rarely used — of the verb *to be* only. It is often found — except in elevated style and poetry, as also in the language of the Bible. In noun clauses *may*, *might* are used after verbs of wishing, *shall*, *should* to express what should or should not be. *May*, *might* is also used in dependent questions; see 766.

Instead of the subjunctive the indicative is often used

DX. Ik had er met den burgemeester over gesproken hem gevraagd, of er geene manier was om al deze moeilijkheden te boven te komen.

DXI. Hebt gij niet dikwijls gewenscht, dat de kamer door uzelf getoekend, even natuurlijk waren als die, die Dickens ons voor oogen heeft gesteld?

DXII. Ik hoop van harte, dat hij gelegenheid vindt om zijn compagnon de zaak te bespreken, daar er voor zoo veel van afhangt.

DXIII. Dat hij zijne gewone morgenwandeling niet deed zoo onverklaarbaar, dat iedereen beproefde er eene verklaring voor te vinden.

DXIV. Hoewel hij smeekte, dat men personen, die onblijikbaar vijandig gezind waren, niet zou toelaten getuigen tegen hem *af te leggen* (to bear), werden zij toch door den rechter opgeroepen.

DXV. Ik eischte, dat allen, die niet onmiddellijk hadden bij de zaak, de kamer verlieten.

DXVI. Vraest gij niet, dat hij zich tegen u zal keer en gij er in volhardt onvoorwaardelijke gehoorzaamheid van te eischen?

DXVI. Ik vind het volstrekt niet vreemd, dat hij beproeft op goeden voet te komen met iemand, die zooveel voor hem en de zijnen kan doen.

DXVII. Als gij er aan begint te twijfelen, of het verhaal waar is of niet, dan zult gij het zeker niet vreemd vinden, dat ik, die hem nooit vertrouwd heb, hem ook nu niet geloof.

769. Wait till you have found a man who **shall be** (= is) so interested enough to advance you money without, in the first place, seeking his own profit.

770. Urgent letters were sent from Chinsurah, exhorting the government of Batavia to fit out an expedition which **might balance** the power of the English in Bengal.

771. He counted on the longing of the army for a fresh struggle which **should restore** its glory.

772. He begged me to convey him to some tavern where he **might send** for a surgeon, being, as he said, faint with loss of blood.

§ 150. In relative clauses the subjunctive is replaced by the indicative, or *may*, *might*, *shall* and *should* are used. *Zou kunnen*, *zou misschien* is translated by *might*.

The substitution of *would* for *should* in 771 would materially alter the meaning of the sentence; certainty would be expressed.

DXVIII. Zij, die het eerst over de rivier kwamen, zouden naar alle waarschijnlijkheid door den vijand worden gedood; doch waren er velen, die zich aanboden.

DXIX. Ik zal trachten een huis te koopen, dat al deze verdeelen vereenigt en bovendien de goede hoedanigheid bezit en niet te duur te zijn.

DXX. Wij brachten hem zoo spoedig mogelijk naar het huis van eenen vriend, vanwaar hij zou kunnen beproeven de plaats te bereiken.

LXXI. Zij, die beproefden op klaarlichten dag te worden gezien en zeer zeker aan de kogels der vijanden ontsnappen.

773. It would be impossible for the woman to end a wandering sort of life when the frost and snow **(should)**

774. I will not disturb their sleep for the yelping of a dog till I **(shall)** know something more about the matter.

775. It was agreed that the town should remain in the hands of the French till it **should be** (= **was**) **ransomed**.

776. Let every one consider how great the temptation was before he **speak** a word in judgment.

777. "If this box **were** full of gold", said the schoolmaster laying his hand upon a black desk which stood upon a table. "I would not give you one farthing to induce you to hold your tongue for ever."

778. If Miss P. **were to make** (= **made, should make**) her appearance now, she would most likely not meet with a favourable reception.

779. In case you **(should)** find any water in that direction, take a pistol that we **may follow** you immediately.

780. If he **does not come back** at the appointed time, then we had better give up our plan, for we cannot manage without him.

781. Whatever his former conduct **may have** (= **has**) been, his present circumstances should exempt him from censure now.

782. He was not to be daunted by the Devil himself, even when he **should come** in the shape of a big bag of money.

783. He always speaks in a tone which forces people to listen, though the matter **be not worth** listening to.

784. When the attempt, though in vain, to lead him to the door, he **might personally administer** justice.

785. He would have his attendants to pull at the strings of his **might have** one more look at the door.

786. I will not leave you here alone, lest you **should be** **lacked** by any of the numerous bands of robbers which now **test** the country.

787. Follow me not, lest evil **befall** thee.

788. You ask me when I shall begin my picture, as if it **were** (= **was**) the easiest thing in the world, as easy as cutting a new novel.

789. Did you ever listen attentively to one of those fine and masterly pieces of Beethoven, where the great composer seems to take a delight in puzzling the hearer, drowning him, **as it were**, in a flood of harmony?

§ 151. In adverbial clauses the subjunctive is used:

1. in adverbial clauses of time, generally with *shall* and *should* (773—775), rarely in a simple tense (776); — the indicative is also common (773—775);

2. in conditional clauses, generally with *should* (778—779); not often in a simple tense, except the two forms *be* and *were* (777); — the indicative is frequently used (778—780);

3. in concessive clauses, *whoever*, *whatever*, etc. being generally followed by *may*, *might* (781), while *though* and *although* take *should* (782); the simple form of the subjunctive is not of frequent occurrence (783); — the subjunctive is sometimes replaced by the indicative (781);

4. in adverbial clauses of purpose and result, *that* being followed by *may*, *might* (784, 785), and *lest* by *should* (786); the simple form is not often used (787);

5. in adverbial clauses of comparison, especially with *were*; the indicative is also met with (788); *als het ware* is rendered by *as it were* (789).

DXXII. Ik zou gaarne mijnen zoon onder uwe leiding willen plaatsen, opdat hij een voldoende kennis verkrijge van ons vak.

DXXIII. Zij hielden de ontdekking geheim, opdat ze die tot hun eigen voordeel zouden kunnen aanwenden.

P. ROERDA, *Dutch and English Compared*, I. 2nd edition. 11

DXXIV. Een groot aantal schildwachten werd in de onmiddellijke nabijheid van het kasteel geplaatst, uit vrees dat een der gevangenen in den nacht zou ontsnappen.

DXXV. Wij moesten vertoeven in een klein dorpje, totdat het rijtuig, waarvan een der wielen was gebroken, hersteld was.

DXXVI. Indien het eenige moeite zou kosten om in dit mistige weer den top van den berg te bereiken, beproef het dan niet, vooral niet, indien de gids bezwaar maakt.

DXXVII. Kom bij mij, wanneer gij volkomen genezen zijt van de zucht tot tegenspreken, die u nu te machtig schijnt.

DXXVIII. De graaf smeekte de gidsen en dragers om de gletschers *geheel af te loopen* (to go all over) en niet terug te keeren, vóór zij het lijk van zijnen zoon hadden gevonden.

DXXIX. Als hij de schurk was, waarvoor gij hem houdt, zou hij dan niet anders hebben gehandeld?

DXXX. Welke ook de reden zij, die hem er toe gebracht heeft op deze manier over de zaak te spreken, niemand zal zijn gedrag volkomen kunnen verontschuldigen.

DXXXI. Het kind liep in de kamer rond en speelde met de anderen, alsof het er geheel aan gewoon was.

DXXXII. Wie ook bij hem komt om over de zaak te spreken, hij moet niet denken, dat ik zijnen drempel weer zal overschrijden, tenzij hij mij dit verzoekt.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE ADVERB.

He buys cheap and sells dear.	{ <i>Hij koopt goedkoop en verkoopt duur.</i>
I loved him dearly.	<i>Ik hield zeer veel van hem.</i>
He will sell his life dearly.	{ <i>Hij zal zijn leven duur verkoopen.</i>
A dear-bought victory.	<i>Een duur gekochte overwinning.</i>

It went clean through.	<i>Het ging er geheel en al door.</i>
The little girl was dressed cleanly.	<i>Het meisje was zindelijk gekleed.</i>
The light burned very clear(ly).	<i>Het licht brandde zeer helder.</i>
He clearly did not know his own mind.	<i>Het was duidelijk, dat hij niet wist, wat hij wou.</i>
You must express yourself clearly.	<i>Je moet je duidelijk uitdrukken.</i>
I sat close to the pulpit.	<i>Ik zat dicht bij den preekstoel.</i>
You will find him close by.	<i>Gij zult hem hier dicht bij vinden.</i>
I am afraid we shall sit very close.	<i>Ik ben bang, dat we erg nauw zullen zitten.</i>
The prisoner was closely watched.	<i>De gevangene werd nauwkeurig bewaakt.</i>
Why don't you play fair?	<i>Waarom speelt gij niet eerlijk?</i>
I have copied it fair.	<i>Ik heb het in 't net overgeschreven.</i>
He bids fair to surpass his brother.	<i>Het heeft allen schijn (het lijkt er wel naar), dat hij zijn broer zal overtreffen.</i>
This small town bids fair to become an important commercial centre.	<i>Dit stadje belooft een belangrijk handelsmiddelpunt te zullen worden.</i>
It fairly took my breath away.	<i>Het deed mij waarlijk ontstellen. Het benam mij werkelijk den adem.</i>
He has acted fairly.	<i>Hij heeft mooi (billijk) gehandeld.</i>
It is full three hours from here to A.	<i>Het is volle drie uur van hier naar A.</i>
I knew full well that it was impossible.	<i>Ik wist heel goed, dat het onmogelijk was.</i>
I am fully convinced of it.	<i>Ik ben er ten volle van overtuigd.</i>
It blows very hard.	<i>Het waait zeer hard.</i>

He tries hard, but he does not prosper.	Hij doet wel zijn best; maar het gaat hem niet voorspoedig.
He has been used (treated) hardly.	Hij is hard behandeld.
I never play high.	Ik speel nooit hoog.
Hold your head high.	Houd het hoofd omhoog.
She was highly displeased at it.	Zij was er ten zeerste over onstemd.
Just come here, will you?	Kom even hier, als 't u belieft.
Mine is just as good as yours.	Het mijne is juist even goed als 't uwe.
He has just been here.	Hij is juist hier geweest.
He counted justly on our indifference.	Hij rekende terecht op onze onverschilligheid.
Don't I speak loud enough?	Spreek ik niet luid genoeg?
The rolling wheels became loudly audible.	De rollende wielen werden duidelijk hoorbaar.
We all praised him loudly.	Wij prezen hem allen ten zeerste.
A new-born child.	Een pasgeboren kind.
New-laid eggs.	Versche eieren.
A newly-married couple.	Een pasgetrouwd (onlangs getrouwd) paar.
They had newly arrived.	Zij waren pas aangekomen.
You did not sing it right.	Je hebt het niet goed gezongen.
If I remember right(ly), he was not there.	Als ik het mij goed herinner, was hij er niet.
He stood right in front of me.	Hij stond vlak voor mij.
Serve him right.	Geef hem zijn verdiende loon.
You were rightly blamed for it.	Gij werdt er terecht om gelaakt.
I cut him short.	Ik viel hem plotseling in de rede; ik maakte plotseling een eind aan zijne woorden.
Cut it short.	Maak het kort.
He stopped short.	Hij hield plotseling op; hij bleef steken.
It falls (comes) short of my expectations.	Het beantwoordt niet aan mijn verwachtingen.

Can't you express it more shortly?	} <i>Kunt gij het niet korter zeggen?</i>
You will shortly hear more of it.	} <i>Gij zult er binnen kort meer van hooren.</i>
The door is wide open.	<i>De deur is wijd open.</i>
Now we are widely separated.	<i>Nu zijn we ver van elkander.</i>
You are not very strong.	<i>Je bent niet erg sterk.</i>
Verily I say unto you.	<i>Voorwaar zeg ik u.</i>
He verily believed what I told him.	<i>Hij geloofde zeker, wat ik hem vertelde.</i>

§ 152. A few adverbs have a form with and without *ly*; sometimes there is no difference at all between the two forms, as *to run quick, quickly*; *to walk slow, slowly*; *to shine bright, brightly*; sometimes the figurative meaning requires the adverb in *ly*, as *dearly, clearly, loudly*; often the two forms have quite different meanings, as *hard* (hard), *hardly* (nauwelijks). In compounds the form without *ly* is generally preferred to the other, as *dear-bought, new-born*.

DXXXIII. Hij maakte een kort einde aan de zaak door te zeggen, dat hij nu genoeg wist en hem dankte voor zijne inlichtingen.

DXXXIV. Ofschoon hij *zijn uiterste best deed* (to struggle hard) om zijne kalmte te bewaren, slaagde hij er slechts ten halve in; geen wonder ook; want niemand zal ontkennen, dat hij hard behandeld is.

DXXXV. Gij weet heel goed, dat gij op mij kunt rekenen, als ik zeg, dat gij er binnen kort meer van zult vernemen.

DXXXVI. Het maakt terecht uwe verontwaardiging gaande, dat hij onder den schijn van vroomheid allerlei bedriegerijen pleegt.

DXXXVII. Kom eens even hier en vertel mij, wat gij van morgen op school hebt gedaan, en laat mij zien, welke van de pas geleerde letters gij het best kent.

DXXXVIII. Zij zagen het arme kind onder eenen boom liggen en dicht in de nabijheid een paar gebroken eieren. Hoog boven hem, meer dan veertig voet van den grond, wees een gebroken tak aan, hoe het ongeluk had plaats gehad.

DXXXIX. De stad belooft eene der grootste en schoonste te worden van het geheele land; in vijf jaar is de bevolking verdubbeld.

790. Have you finished **already**? I shall not have done in an hour at least; these problems are so difficult that I cannot solve them.

791. It was so many years since she had danced at school that she had forgotten all the figures (Het was **al** zoovele jaren geleden, enz.).

792. We have been married *these five years now* (nu **al** 5 jaar), and we have steadily increased our fortune by our patient industry.

793. Goldsmith had *even then* (toen **al**) begun writing the "Deserted Village."

794. This plan had been formed *as far back as* (**reeds** in) 1755, but only twenty years after, it was realized.

795. It is known that miners made use of gunpowder to blast rocks *as early as* (**reeds** in) the 12th century.

796. Have you heard whether this question has been settled **yet**?

797. "I have finished it!" — "*So soon* (nu **al**)? Why, you have been quick about it."

798. *The mere mention* (**reeds** het noemen) of his name sufficed to make us feel uneasy.

§ 153. *Al*, *reeds* is left untranslated when it has not its full force.

When it means *toen reeds*, it is rendered by *even* (even at his birth), and before dates often by *as early as*, *as far back as*.

Already is sometimes replaced by *yet*, especially at the end of interrogative sentences.

Note: *al rijker en rijker* (richer and richer); *hij zit maar al te praten* (he keeps talking away).

DXL. *Ik had al gedacht* (= had ik niet gedacht), dat hij niet komen zou; hij heeft het vandaag veel te druk.

DXLI. Wij hebben hem reeds eenige malen verzocht bij ons te komen dineeren; reeds in het begin van Maart hebben wij hem eene uitnoodiging gezonden.

DXLII. Ik had u al vroeger willen vragen lid te worden van onze vereeniging, als ik er maar voor in de gelegenheid was geweest.

DXLIII. Ik zal nooit aan iemand vertellen, wat gij mij zoo-even hebt medegedeeld. Reeds de gedachte, dat iemand anders het gewaar zou kunnen worden, is mij ondragelijk.

DXLIV. Heb je het huis al gezien? De eigenaar heeft mij al tienmaal gevraagd, hoe het je bevalen was.

799. My husband was buried **only** yesterday. Yet I must turn from my grief, and consider how I am to face the world.

800. When he was **only** twenty-seven, this important mission was entrusted to him.

801. We could hardly believe that this was the same village we had left **but** the day before.

§ 154. *Eerst, pas* is often translated by *only* instead of *not until, not before*; when it means *nog maar, slechts zoo kort geleden*, we must render it by *only* or *but*.

DXLV. Zijt gij niet pas gisteren hier geweest? Ik meen u de deur te hebben zien binnengaan, of ik moet mij in den persoon hebben vergist.

DXLVI. Nu eerst zie ik, dat ik mij een verkeerde voorstelling van dit alles had gemaakt.

DXLVII. Wij moeten wachten tot het volgende jaar; dan eerst kunnen wij met eenigen graad van zekerheid zeggen, of de onderneming kans van slagen heeft.

802. We had better lock the door; *for there is no knowing* (men kan **immers** niet weten) what may happen.

803. You need not be so angry with me. *It is not my fault, is it* (Het is **immers** mijne schuld niet)?

804. You are very naughty and disobedient. *Had not I forbidden you* (Ik had je **immers** verboden) to enter my room when I was not there?

805. You may be quite sure that your money is safe. *Do you think that uncle* (Oom zou **immers** niet) would have invested his money in the undertaking if there had been the slightest risk?

§ 155. *Immers* is translated in various ways. It is often rendered by the conjunction *for*, frequently in connection with the translation of *wel*, *niet waar*, the latter being also used by itself as an equivalent for *immers*. Not unfrequently we have to replace the sentence with *immers* by another construction, before translating it.

DXLVIII. „Wie is daar?” — „Ik ben het; ik mag immers nu wel weer binnenkomen, of hebben de heeren nog meer geheimen te bespreken?”

DXLIX. „Geef het mij!” — „Ik heb het immers niet (= En ik heb het niet).”

DL. Waarom zijt gij niet bij mij gekomen? Gij weet immers wel, dat ik u met genoeg wil helpen, indien gij in moeilijkheden zijt.

DLI. Er zullen wel velen zijn, die hem gaarne dien dienst bewijzen. Hij is immers rijk?

DLII. Zou ik hem zulk een verzoek geweigerd hebben, indien het mij mogelijk ware geweest er aan te voldoen? Neen immers.

806. One copy of the *Great Charter* ¹⁾ still remains in the British Museum, injured by age and fire, but with the royal seal still hanging from the brown, shrivelled parchment.

¹⁾ The *Great Charter* or *Magna Charta* (ch = k) was obtained by the English barons from King John, A. D. 1215.

807. She saw him bending over her; **still** (*maar nog altijd*) she could not believe that her son had returned.

808. Though I had **never yet** heard of it, I said that I had learned all the details of the story from my brother.

809. Nobody has **as yet** any suspicion that you are the man who is sought for all over the country.

810. There he is, just entering at the window! Don't you see him? He will save the child **yet**!

811. How he managed to live **at all**, is a mystery which cannot be solved now, perhaps could not be solved even then.

812. Her age was forty-eight, the bridegroom **not** being quite twenty-six.

813. He had **not** been there a fortnight before it was evident that his health was rapidly improving.

814. Signs were not wanting that before long there would be **yet** greater enmity between the two parties.

815. I had nearly gained the outlet of the little river. A few moments **more**, and I should be comparatively safe.

§ 156. *Nog* = *nog altijd* is rendered by *still*; *nog niet* and *nog nooit* by *not yet* and *never yet*. *Nog* (toch nog) = *yet*; *nog* (pas) = *only* or *but*; *vooralsnog* = *as yet*; *nu nog* = *even now*. *Nog geen twintig*, *nog geen uur* are rendered by *not twenty*, *not an hour* when the stress does not fall upon *nog*.

DLIII. De reizigers zijn nog altijd in Zwitserland, en daar zij de *natuur* (scenery) zoo prachtig vinden, zullen ze nog wel een week of drie blijven.

DLIV. Indien gij *nog* (at all) van plan zijt hun eene visite te maken, doe het dan dadelijk; want morgen vertrekken zij.

DLV. Niemand heeft er nog van gesproken, zoodat de zaak niet bekend behoeft te worden, indien gij vreest uwe belofte niet te kunnen nakomen.

DLVI. In het jaar 1865 was ik te Rome. De stad had toen (nog) niet het nieuwerwetsche voorkomen gekregen, dat zij nu heeft.

DLVII. Hij was nog niet lang dood (*geveest*), toen de molen werd verkocht.

DLVIII. Zijn gelaat *wilde er niet* (= weigerde) vreeswekkend uitzien, *al fronsde hij ook nog zoo zijn voorhoofd* (let him frown as he would).

DLIX. Gisteren nog was hij gezond en wel, en nu ligt hij daar neer, koud en dood.

DLX. Nu nog weten ouden van dagen te vertellen, hoe groot de schrik was, als slechts de naam van Napoleon werd genoemd.

DLXI. Wij zullen onzen zoon toch nog te zien krijgen; in September krijgt hij eenige dagen verlof en komt dan zoo spoedig mogelijk uit Engeland hier.

DLXII. De stad is nog geen twee mijl van hier; als wij vlug loopen, zijn we er in een half uur.

§ 157. Note the following adverbs and translations of Dutch adverbs:

Formerly I should not have thought of it.	}	<i>Vroeger zou ik er niet aan gedacht hebben.</i>
Some days before, I had paid the money.		<i>Eenige dagen vroeger had ik het geld betaald.</i>
Can't you come earlier?		<i>Kunt gij niet vroeger komen?</i>
I used to like him very much	}	<i>Ik hield vroeger heel veel van hem.</i>
Talk away, boys!		<i>Praat maar door, jongens!</i>
He went on reading.		<i>Hij ging voort met lezen.</i>
The boy hammered away.		<i>De jongen hamert er maar op los.</i>
Thus () and he lived, thus () and he died.	}	<i>Zoo leefde hij, en zoo stierf hij.</i>
Is it not so?		<i>Is het zoo niet?</i>
Thus much of our plans.		<i>Zooveel over onze plannen.</i>
Is the word spelt like this?		<i>Wordt het woord zóó gespeld?</i>
That is how I became a soldier.		<i>Zóó werd ik soldaat.</i>
She did not go quite that length.		<i>Zij ging niet zóó ver.</i>

in this way (= so) you will never succeed.	<i>Zoo zult gij nooit slagen.</i>
He succeeded but so so.	<i>Hij is er maar zoo zoo in ge- slaagd.</i>
How is his leg? — So so.	<i>Hoe gaat het met zijn been? — Zoo zoo.</i>
Sounds are marked thus £.	<i>Ponden worden zóó aangeduid £.</i>
That is the way of the world.	<i>Zoo gaat het in de wereld.</i>
How old? How old is he then?	<i>Zoo? Hoe oud is hij dan?</i>
He arrived just now.	<i>Hij is zoo pas aangekomen.</i>
I remember rightly.	<i>Als ik mij juist herinner.</i>
Exactly! That is right.	<i>Juist! Dat is goed.</i>
Quite so! That's how it hap- pened.	<i>Juist! Op die manier is het gebeurd.</i>
He is just the man for it.	<i>Hij is er juist de man naar.</i>
This is the very book I want.	<i>Dit boek moet ik juist hebben.</i>
We have just missed the train.	<i>Wij hebben den trein juist gemist.</i>
Was just going to leave the room.	<i>Ik zou juist de kamer verlaten.</i>
Why must I say it now?	<i>Waarom moet ik het nu juist zeggen.</i>
He began the poem even now.	<i>Hij is juist op dit tijdstip met het gedicht begonnen.</i>
He turned to him with just the faintest touch of dis- dain.	<i>Zij wendde zich tot hem met eenige, zij het ook nauwe- lijks merkbare, minachting.</i>
Just run upstairs.	<i>Loop eens even naar boven.</i>
The thing must be done some- how.	<i>Het moet toch op de eene of andere manier gebeuren.</i>
He lives somehow.	<i>Hij leeft; maar hoe en waar- van, dat weet ik niet.</i>
He has somehow or other got hold of it.	<i>Hij heeft het op de eene of andere manier in handen gekregen.</i>
In anyhow, I don't see the dif- ference.	<i>In allen gevalle, ik zie het verschil niet.</i>
In somehow, he doesn't seem to like it much.	<i>Ik weet niet, hoe het komt; maar hij schijnt er niet veel aardigheid aan te hebben.</i>

have not asked for it,	} <i>Je hebt er toch niet om ge-</i>
you?	<i>vraagd?</i>
I also be here, I hope?	} <i>Hij komt toch ook?</i>
easily understand he did	} <i>Ik kan mij gemakkelijk begrij-</i>
Still, he should not have	<i>pen, dat hij het gedaan heeft;</i>
it.	<i>maar toch had hij het niet</i>
	<i>moeten doen.</i>
stayed away too long	} <i>Ik ben tóch al te lang weg-</i>
is.	<i>gebleven.</i>
done it after all.	} <i>Hij heeft het toch nog gedaan.</i>
more do you want, I	} <i>Wat wil je dan toch in vredes</i>
der?	<i>naam nog meer?</i>
e to give him the same.	} <i>Geef hem toch vooral hetzelfde.</i>
uld have done it all the	} <i>Hij zou het toch gedaan hebben.</i>
.	
ay I must come. Why	} <i>Je zegt, dat ik komen moet.</i>
?	<i>Waarom toch?</i>
can I have put it?	} <i>Waar heb ik het toch gelegd?</i>
not mislaid it, have I?	<i>Ik heb het toch niet verlegd?</i>
do not like him, which,	} <i>Zij houden niet van hem, wat</i>
ed, does not surprise me.	<i>mij trouwens niet verwondert.</i>
do not like him, nor	} <i>Zij houden niet van hem; trou-</i>
this surprise me.	<i>wens, dat verwondert mij niet.</i>
annot rely upon him.	} <i>Je kunt niet op hem rekenen.</i>
the rest, there are but	<i>Er zijn trouwens maar wei-</i>
persons that are entirely	<i>nige menschen, die volkomen</i>
worthy.	<i>te vertrouwen zijn.</i>
not fit for it; besides,	} <i>Hij is er niet geschikt voor;</i>
too old now.	<i>trouwens hij is nu te oud.</i>
escaped alone, and, for	} <i>Ik ben alleen ontsnapt; trou-</i>
matter of that, I could	<i>wens ik had mijnen vriend</i>
have saved my friend.	<i>niet kunnen redden.</i>
a little longer.	} <i>Blijf nog wat.</i>
seen rather much.	<i>Ik heb vrij wat gezien.</i>
me rather sooner than	} <i>Hij kwam wel wat eerder dan</i>
ad expected.	<i>wij verwacht hadden.</i>

He will be there; but then, he has hardly anything to do.	Hij zal daar zijn; hij heeft dan ook bijna niets te doen.
It is impossible (not possible) for me to do it.	Ik kan het onmogelijk doen.
I cannot possibly do it.	
One is apt to be mistaken in this.	Men vergist zich hierin licht.
The child is not given to crying. The child does not easily cry.	Het kind schreit niet gauw.
He is apt to take offence.	Hij neemt gauw iets kwalijk.
His nature was noble, though some people had a mistaken impression to the contrary.	Hij was edel van natuur, ofschoon sommige menschen verkeerdelijk het tegendeel dachten.
These tribes came to be called by that name.	Deze stammen werden later (na verloop van tijd) zoo genoemd.
Among our towns, London stood chief.	Onder onze steden stond Londen bovenaan.
It was written with a special regard to this.	Het werd geschreven vooral met het oog hierop.
I hesitate to do it.	Ik doe het aarzelend.
It is horrible in the extreme.	Het is allerverschrikkelijkst.
It is but justice to say that he has always done his best.	Het is niet meer dan billijk te zeggen, dat hij altijd zijn best heeft gedaan.
Properly speaking, it was his fault.	Eigenlijk was het zijne schuld.
Is it right, do you think?	Is het eigenlijk wel goed?
It has, in a manner, surprised me.	Het heeft mij eenigszins verbaasd.
I was somewhat surprised.	Ik was eenigszins verbaasd.
I could not help feeling a little uneasy about it.	Ik kon niet nalaten mij daarover eenigszins ongerust te maken.

If I <i>can</i> do it, I shall fetch the child from school.	<i>Indien ik het eenigszins doen, zal ik het kind school halen.</i>
If I had had the least idea of it I should have prevented it,	<i>Indien ik dit eenigszins kunnen denken, zou ik verhinderd hebben.</i>
If you are at all afraid (afraid at all), you must not stay here.	<i>Indien gij ook maar eenig bang zijt, moet gij hier blijven.</i>
I don't believe it is at all dangerous in that way.	<i>Ik geloof niet, dat het op die manier ook maar eenig gevaarlijk is.</i>
As usual, he did not know what to answer.	<i>Zooals gewoonlijk wist hij niet wat hij zou antwoorden.</i>
It was in a sharper tone than usual that he spoke.	<i>Hij sprak op scherperen toon dan gewoonlijk.</i>
If he were my dearest friend, nay my own son, he must die.	<i>Al ware hij ook mijn liefste vriend, ja zelfs mijn zoon, hij moet sterven.</i>
I will not answer you, nor will I even listen to you.	<i>Ik wil u niet antwoorden, ik wil niet eens naar u luisteren.</i>

PLACE OF THE ADVERB.

816. His character was **truly** amiable, so that we need wonder that he was idolized by his people.

817. It is not yet dark **enough** for our purpose. No days **ago** you also spoiled the whole business by your haste.

§ 158. Adverbs qualifying adjectives or other adverbs are placed before the word they qualify, except *enough*. Thus, that we say *two days ago* (*since*).

DLXIII. Gij hebt er nu lang genoeg over nagedacht. Drie dagen geleden heb ik u met de zaak in kennis gesteld, zodat gij het vóór en tegen goed hebt kunnen overwegen.

DLXIV. Ik ben er tamelijk zeker van, dat hij niet zal terugkomen. Volkomen zeker kan ik natuurlijk niet zijn.

818. An incident had happened early in the opening of the year, which had served **greatly** to strengthen their friendship.

819. He was bound to fulfil **completely and continually** every one of the Ten Commandments.

820. I asked him **never** to do it again. I am quite sure that I **never** asked him to do it.

§ 159. When two verbs are placed next to one another, great care should be taken so to place the adverb that there can be no ambiguity. In 818 we do not know whether *greatly* qualifies *to serve* or *to strengthen*. To avoid ambiguity we may even put the restrictive adverb between the verb and the object.

Modern writers frequently place the adverb between *to* and the verb, as *to greatly strengthen*, *to kindly come back*.

DLXV. Ik heb nooit gevreesd aan iedereen te zeggen, dat hij op mij een ongunstigen indruk heeft gemaakt.

DLXVI. Ik vroeg hem vriendelijk te doen, wat in zijn vermogen was, om den ongelukkige te helpen.

DLXVII. Ik vroeg hem, *of hij zoo vriendelijk wou zijn* (kindly) den volgenden dag terug te komen.

821. During many years of anxiety and peril, he **never**, in any emergency, lost, even for a moment, the perfect use of his admirable judgment.

822. The Duke had brought **with him from the continent** but a scanty supply of pikes and muskets.

823. We saw **at once** the necessity of doing what he had proposed.

824. He will produce, **at best**, something new as far as form is concerned.

825. I had been quite positive that this was the one sensation I **never** could possibly experience a second time.

826. I am convinced now that I **never** was really in love.

827. He had seen her condition, and sympathized with it **fully**.

828. Mr. Pearson was an old gentleman, who did not live **often** at B., and who **never** was there in winter.

829. **Once, and only once, after his acquittal**, Hastings interfered in politics.

830. It was no wonder that her husband felt this discovery of domestic treason **acutely**.

831. **Out** came the chaise — **in** went the horses — **on** sprung the boys — **in** got the travellers.

§ 160. The word or expression upon which emphasis is laid, is usually placed at the beginning or at the end of a sentence.

For this reason it is that, when the object is emphatic, the adverb, or adverbial expression, is sometimes placed between the predicate and the object.

When adverbs of indefinite time are used with emphasis, they are often placed before the first auxiliary, but also at the beginning or at the end of the sentence, as *Never shall I forget that day; I never shall forget that day; He came to me often.*

DLXVIII. Indien *gij* niet zoo haastig waart geweest, zou het boek veel beter zijn geworden. Wat haastig wordt gedaan, wordt dikwijls slecht gedaan.

DLXIX. Hij moet iets belangrijks gedaan hebben, anders zou hij het nooit tot zulk eene hoogte hebben kunnen *brenge*n (to rise).

DLXX. Zij heroverden in den loop van eenige dagen de

leeste sterkten, die in het begin van het jaar in handen van een vijand waren gevallen.

DLXXI. Er was één ding, waarop hij zijne zinnen had gezet: hij wenschte deftig begraven te worden.

DLXXII. Dikwijls had hij mij er op gewezen, van hoeveel belang deze ontdekking voor ons allen kon worden.

DLXXIII. Ofschoon ik weer den steun ontving van hen, die mij het vorige jaar hadden geholpen, was de som, waarvoor ik kon beschikken, nu lang zoo groot niet.

CHAPTER XI.

THE CONJUNCTION.

832. As the Pope had never consented either to the divorce of Queen Catharine or to the marriage of Anne Boleyn (pr. Eng. bullin) the Catholics urged that Elizabeth must be considered as illegitimate.

833. As the route of the friends lay in the same direction, they agreed to perform the rest of the journey together.

834. I could not help gratifying their request, **because** I loved to see them happy.

835. "Why did you go there?" — "**Because** I couldn't go anywhere else; that is the reason why I went there."

836. I will not have anything to do with him, because he is not honest. **Since** you ask me for the reason, that is my answer.

837. **Since** your decision is made, I will say no more.

838. Some objected that the reply to "Is it a bear?" ought to have been "Yes;" **inasmuch as** an answer in the negative was sufficient to have diverted their thoughts from Mr. Scrooge.

839. I am ready to accept your proposal, **inasmuch as** I believe it is the best you can offer.

§ 161. *Because* introduces a reason, so it always begins an answer to the question *why*.

As is used when the dependent clause contains an explanation of what is expressed in the principal clause. It points to some existing fact by way of assigning a ground.

Since stands midway between *because* and *as*, often begins a sentence, and corresponds to the Dutch *nu, nu ... toch, daar*.

Inasmuch as is rendered by *aangezien, in zooverre als, daar ... toch, daar immers*.

DLXXIV. Hij was onredelijk, omdat niemand ooit met hem durfde redeneeren, en daar ik dit wist, kon ik veel van hem verdragen.

DLXXV. Ik wensch met mijn werk voort te gaan. Nu gij mij vraagt, wat ik wensch, is dat mijn antwoord.

DLXXVI. Daar het hem toch geheel onmogelijk zal zijn aan uw verzoek te voldoen, moest gij het hem liever niet vragen.

DLXXVII. „Waarom hebt gij uwe partij verlaten?” — „Omdat ik zag, dat de meesten van hen, die er toe behooren, hun eigen belang boven dat van het land stellen.”

840. When I was twenty-five years old, I was as helpless as Samson in his captivity. For I was blind! Blind! Who but the victim can even faintly comprehend the significance of that word? Who can know the depth of my anguish as I turned and turned on my pillow, and thought of the fifty years of darkness which might be mine — a thought which made me wish that, when I fell asleep, it might be to wake no more.

841. The chief art of learning, as Locke has observed, is to attempt but little at a time.

842. The story how it came to be so, need not be very long, nor will it, (as) I think, entail any great degree of odious criminality either upon the man or upon the woman.

¹⁾ *To entail upon* = vastzetten (eene bezitting) op, as *he entailed the estate upon the nearest male heir*. In a figurative sense it is rendered by

843. London, **as** seen by the poor drudge from a garret, probably presented a prospect gloomy enough.

844. We must judge of a creed by its effects on character, **as** we judge of the wholesomeness of food by its effect on bodily health.

845. His curates troubled him **as little as possible**, and threw off **as far as they could** that zeal which is so dear to the youthful mind.

846. No doubt the thirst of gold grew upon him, increasing **as** his money increased.

847. **As** the dangers of these attempts became better known, and **as** their comparative uselessness for all except scientific purposes grew more apparent, public interest in the matter faded.

848. Slowly **as** the conquering tribes had learned to know themselves by the one national name of Englishmen, they earned yet more slowly to stamp their name on the land they had won.

849. Bunyan, intensely religious **as** he was, and narrow **as** his theology was, is always human.

850. Admire **as** we may *Paradise Lost*, try **as** we may to admire *Paradise Regained*, acknowledge **as** we must the splendour of the imagery and the stately march of the verse, there comes upon us a sense of the unfitness of the subject for Milton's treatment of it.

851. Boy **as** he was, horse and man went down before his lance.

852. The saint became capable of obedience so perfect **as** not only to suffice for himself, but to supply the want of others.

853. The reader is so carried away by his frankness and energy **as** almost to rejoice when he succeeds.

het zich meebrengen voor, na zich slepen voor. The second part of the sentence under consideration may be translated by: *ook zal het (het verhaal), naar ik denk, noch den man noch de vrouw in onze oogen bijzonder visdadig maken.*

854. That which the man had done had been of such a nature **as** to solve all bonds of affection.

855. He thought it even dangerous to attribute to the Almighty a character so arbitrary **as** that He would exact an account from his creatures.

856. The crowd was wrought up to such an extasy of rage, **that** the executioner was in danger of being torn to pieces.

857. This was so exciting **that** I forgot everything.

This was so exciting, **as** to make me forget everything, **that** it made me forget everything.

858. **As** I hope to be saved, there is the horseman again. Don't you see him now?

859. Many of these great crown-vassals, **as**, for example, the Dukes of Normandy, became exceedingly proud.

860. We grow a great many things in our garden, **as** potatoes, salad, beans, etc.

§ 162. *As* is rendered by:

1. *als, toen*, and has no special reference to the time of the action, but to what happens at the same time with it; we can never render it by *onmiddellijk nadat, nadat* ¹⁾ (840);

2. *zoals, naar*, to express whether the statement, etc. is made by the writer or by another (841); *as* is often omitted, especially in colloquial language (842); when the verb is passive, the subject is often left out, sometimes also the verb *to be* (843);

3. *evenals* = in the same way **as** (844);

4. *naarmate* = in proportion **as** (846, 847);

5. *hoe ... ook, hoezeer ... ook, welk een ... ook, hoevel, al*, in which case the adverb, adjective, verb, or noun is placed before **as** (848–851);

¹⁾ When you enter the room, you must shut the door.

He stumbled **as** he crossed the threshold.

If you want to enter, why don't you say so?

6. *dat*, followed by a dependent clause. The construction with *as* and an infinitive is usually found when the principal clause contains *so* + *adjective* or *such*, and the subject of the Dutch dependent clause is the same as that of the principal clause (852–854); when the subjects are different, the construction with *that* — sometimes preceded by *as* — must be used (855, 856); see also 857;

7. *zoo waar (als)* in asseverations (858);

8. *zooals (bij voorbeeld)*; see 859, 860.

In the translation of expressions like *as much as possible*, *as far as I know*, etc., the second *as* need not be rendered (845).

DLXXVIII. Gij weet, wat het is zóó te leven, dat de dood een zegen wordt.

DLXXIX. Gij weet, wat het is zóó te leven, dat gij een zegen wordt voor de uwen.

DLXXX. Wat hij zegt, is zóó eenvoudig, dat het dikwijls geene beteekenis heeft.

DLXXXI. Welk een vurig krijgsman hij ook was, hij zette op eenendertigjarigen leeftijd elke gedachte aan verovering *van sich* (aside).

DLXXXII. Dat hij weg was, veroorzaakte een groote *leegte* (blank) in haar leven, die, noch hare kinderen, noch hare ouders konden aanvullen, *al spanden ze zich ook nog zoo in* (exert themselves as they would).

DLXXXIII. Hoe belangrijk ook het oogenblik is, het is niet het belangrijkste *van* (in) mijn leven.

DLXXXIV. Hoezeer hij ook moge beproeven dit na te doen, *hij zal zien, dat het onmogelijk is* (= hij zal het onmogelijk vinden).

DLXXXV. Naarmate het aantal zijner soldaten toenam, vermeerderde het vertrouwen van den aanvoerder.

DLXXXVI. Een vader maakt plannen voor zijn kind, zoodra het in de wereld komt.

DLXXXVII. Indien ooit de liefde, zooals de dichters zin-

gen. er behaagen in scheep in een hutje te wonen, dan had hij niet zyn.

LXXXVII. Hij wordt in beroering gebracht door de barbaarsche, evenals het water door den wind waaende wagen.

LXXXVIII. Dit gedicht trok, zooals reeds gezegd (toen) is, de aandacht der critici.

LXXXIX. Zoo waar als ik leef, ik dacht, dat hij niet gaarne met haar kon zyn.

§ 163. Note the use of *as* in the following sentences:

861. I agree with you *as* regards this point.

862. Be cautious *as* to what you say.

863. *As* to whether there is any chance for you, should I know?

864. I loved him the more *as* he was never exacting.

865. I loved him, the more so *as* he was never exacting.

866. Coming, *as* he did, just in time, he could not have arrived at a better moment.

867. He had been impressed — *as who was not* (en was dat niet) — by her marvellous beauty.

868. She loves the young girl — *as why* should she not?

869. The Marchioness of K. knew of this, *as* how could she otherwise?

870. What she means by it *not a soul* knows *but* the person herself (*but* me; *but* I).

871. Why have they come *but* to annoy us?

872. In my island I wanted *nothing but* what I had, and I had *nothing but* what I wanted.

873. *As* to your marriage with *any but* my daughter, that I will never consent to.

874. Who should enter the room **but** the best friend I had ever had!

875. *None but* they have a right to inspect the books.

876. There remains *no more than* (= **but**) to thank you for your courteous attention.

877. It is *nothing else than* (= **but**) laziness.

878. I have *no other* means of subsistence **than** those which chance throws in my way.

879. In the middle ages, persons obnoxious to the government were frequently imprisoned without *any other* authority **than** a royal order.

880. How could we appreciate all the simplicities of the good man's household **but for** the rogueries with which they are brought in contact?

881. She was alone **except** (= **but**) **for** (op . . . na) her servant, who walked at a respectful distance behind her.

882. Such a life is **anything but** pleasing to me.

883. When they found him, he was **all but** dead.

884. There is *no one* who reads this **but** will say that they have done wrong.

885. There is *no man* who has much money **but** wants more.

886. *No little wound* of the kind ever came to him **but that** he disclosed it at once.

887. *Not a settler* in the domain of the Abbot **but** was bound to pay his pence to the Abbot's treasury.

888. It *never* rains **but** it pours (prov.).

889. *Who can but* admire this quality of gratitude in an unprotected orphan; and, if there entered some degree of selfishness into her calculations, *who can say but that* her prudence was perfectly justifiable?

890. The advice, as he *could not but* feel, was good; the less said about poor John the better.

891. I *cannot say but that* I acquiesced in his reasons, and admired his noble humility.

892. I *cannot think but that* every novelist who has thought much of his art, will have realized as much as that for himself.

893. *Who knows but (that)* you may be summoned away to-morrow?

894. You have no right to expect that the Bishop will sympathize with you in this; nor *can it be but that* in such a country as ours the voices of many will be against you.

895. I should *not* have done it **but that** P. has been with me.

896. He would have sent in his resignation **but that** his mother and sister depended upon him for support.

897. She has no money, and that is a serious drawback. **Not but that** several young men of twenty and twenty-five would be content to marry her without a dowry, did their papas and mammas permit it.

898. I have *no doubt but* (= that) you will find him a valuable assistant.

899. *Never fear but* I'll go; I have an interest in being the first to deliver this message.

900. It is **but** right he should have proper attendance while he is ill.

901. When we entered, he was not reading **but** walking up and down despairingly.

902. *Ah! but he knows better than to go there* (Ja, maar hij zal wel oppassen, daar niet heen te gaan).

903. *I say! but you had a narrow escape* (Zeg eens, daar ben je goed afgekomen)!

904. *Come! but that is drawing it rather too strong* (kom, je moet ons niet te veel wijs willen maken; neen, maar nu maak je het te grof).

§ 164. The original meaning of *but* is the Dutch *buiten*, which explains most of the cases in which it is now used. It is generally found after a negation or a question implying a negation, and is rendered by:

1. *dan*, *behalve*, and may be considered as a preposition or as a conjunction (870—874); when the word after *but* is the subject of the clause, *but* must be a conjunction (870, 875);

after a comparative, *than* is preferred to *but* (876—879); — a negation need not precede, as *all (every one) but me*;

Note that *anything but* is translated by *allesbehalve*, and *all but* by *bijna* (he is all but dead = *uitgezonderd het dood zijn is hij dood, dus nog niet geheel en al dood*); see 882 and 883.

2. *zonder*, in which case it is followed by *for* (but for = except for = if it had not been for). The part of the sentence before *but for* need not be negative, as *he would have been killed but for me* (als ik er niet geweest was; zonder mij). *But for* requires various renderings (880—881);

3. *die niet, of*. The subject may be omitted after *but* when it can be easily supplied; not after *but that*, which is often put for *but* (884—887);

4. *dat (conj.) . . . niet, zonder dat, of* (888);

5. *dan; cannot, could not, dare not*, etc., and the interrogative (*who*) *can, (who) could*, etc. with ellipsis of a verb, as *to do, to be*, and followed by *but*, are generally rendered by *moet wel, moest wel, moet niet* (889, 890);

6. *dan dat, of niet*, with the omission of *anything else* (891—894);

7. *indien niet*; the preceding clause need not be negative (895, 896).

Note that *not but that* is rendered by *wel; ik wil niet zeggen, dat niet*, as *Not but that I should have got out, if I had had the chance* (897).

After the negative of verbs of *fearing* and *doubting* we use *but, but that, or that* (898, 899).

By the omission of the negative accompanying the preceding verb, *but* passes into the adverbial sense of *nought but, only*, as *there are but five* = *there are none but five; I can but do my best; we can but try* (900).

But, as an adversative conjunction, corresponds to the Dutch *maar, doch* (901); and just as we say *Neen, maar wat was dat mooi! Neem het me niet kwalijk, maar wat gaat u dat aan?* *but* is used after an exclamation or interjection, to denote some degree of opposition, objection, or protest (902—904).

DXCI. Neem het mij niet kwalijk, maar heeft u misschien eene beurs op den weg gevonden? Ik heb de mijne verloren.

DXCII. Iedereen behalve een dwaas zou begrepen hebben, dat dit het minst geschikte oogenblik was om het verzoek te doen.

DXCIII. Ik moet wel ingenomen zijn met de verzekering, dat hij alles voor mij in orde zal brengen.

DXCIV. Het kan kwalijk (anders) [*zijn*], dan dat hij zich vergist heeft.

DXCV. Ik wil niet zeggen, dat hij zich geene moeite heeft gegeven; hij is er evenwel niet in geslaagd het werk goed te volbrengen.

DXCVI. Hij wist niet, of niet de schurk geld genoeg op *zak* (= in zijnen zak) had om zijnen overtocht naar Amerika op eene der groote booten te betalen.

DXCVII. Ik zag hem nooit in de oogen, of ik las daarin ware vriendschap.

DXCVIII. Er is geen diefstal gepleegd *in een groot aantal jaren* (these many years) binnen 20 mijl van deze stad, of ik heb er *van geweten* (to be privy to).

DXCIX. Hij kwam de verzoeking te boven, *waarvoor* (= waaronder) hij zonder die kracht zou zijn *bezwegen* (= gevallen).

DC. Ik weet geen anderen weg daarheen dan door den tuin.

DCI. Indien hij werkelijk vast besloten was geweest het meisje te huwen, twijfel ik er niet aan, dat hij ten laatste de toestemming van zijne ouders zou hebben verkregen.

DCII. Er was niet één van hen, die niet door het gevaarlijke dier verschrikt, bezeerd of gewond was.

DCIII. Ze zou naar Londen zijn geijld om haren zoon van het verderf te redden, indien niet haar man zoo ziek was (geweest).

DCIV. Wie weet, of hij het geld niet terug had kunnen krijgen, indien hij er vriendelijk om had gevraagd.

DCV. Ik heb in 't geheel geene vrees, dat hij zich niet aan de bepalingen zal willen onderwerpen.

905. The happiness he gives is quite as great **as** if it cost a fortune.

906. He would pass whole days in the library, consulting a multiplicity of authors, **as though** he were pursuing some interesting subject.

907. Its hair, and skirts, and tassels were still agitated **as** by the hot vapour from an oven.

908. I was quite dazzled **as it were** by the brightness of her beauty.

§ 165. *Alsof* is rendered by *as if*, much less frequently by *as though*, and sometimes by *as*, especially in *as it were* (als het ware). Compare: *De sterretjes flikkerden, als waren zij blijde.*

DCVI. De oude heer knoopte zijne overjas dicht tot aan de kin, alsof de zomer reeds plaats gemaakt had voor den winter.

DCVII. Zij had hem opgepast in zijne ziekte, alsof zij *eene verpleegster* was geweest, *die voor hare diensten werd beloond* (a paid nurse).

DCVIII. Zij zag hem aan en hoorde, dat hij haar gelastte heen te gaan; maar zij bleef, waar zij was, als *niet in staat* (unable) zich te bewegen.

909. I get so puzzled sometimes that I am not even able to make up my mind **whether** there is any good at all in us, **or whether** we are born bad.

910. I doubt **whether** you can tell **whether** Dowlah ruled in Oude or in Travancore, **or whether** Holkar was a Hindoo **or** a Mussulman.

911. We did not dare to go ashore, not knowing **if** we should find dry ground to camp on.

912. I do not see **whether** the answer is satisfactory **or not** (= **or no**).

913. I am engaged, **otherwise** I would accept the invitation.

927. Some of these stories are no doubt true are either invented or very much exaggerated.

928. **Whereas** the eldest son of the late King years of age, a regent will have to be appointed

§ 168. *While* as an adversative conjunction (§ replaced by *whereas*, which often renders the D *daarentegen*, *terwijl* *toch* (925—926). *Whereas* also *gezien*, *vermits*, *overwegende dat*, and is used in dig (928).

DCXVIII. Als men een kind straft, wanneer het o is, krijgt het zijn strafwerk, en *daar is 't mee uit* an end of it), terwijl men door steeds den naijver van op te wekken de grondslagen legt van voortdurend on
DCXIX. Aangezien ten gevolge van den hevigen st huis in de Hoogstraat op het punt is in te storten, burgemeester bekend maken, dat de passage in die str nadere aankondiging gestremd zal zijn.

§ 169. Note the use of the following conjunctions:

929. Why pour philosophy out of the mouth of a fashionable young gentleman like Pelham, *seeing that* (daar to young gentlemen of that sort rarely, we may say never, after that fashion.

930. Why should you make yourself so desolate here, *when* (terwijl) we shall be so glad to have you?

931. This seems the more likely, *that* (= as, daar) Goldsmith immediately afterward resolved to challenge examination

932. It won't interfere with your amusements *that* (= *far as*) I can see.

933. The (= these) words sketch for us a scholar's life, *the* more touching in its simplicity *that* (om deze reden, dat) it is the life of the first great English scholar.

934. His only anxiety was *lest* (= *that*) he should not be able to explain himself satisfactorily.

935. In this way he concealed his wages, *lest* (uit vrees dat, opdat niet) he should be robbed, or lose the money on the road.

936. It was not long *before* (of) the gas was lighted, and I could again see the shadows thrown upon the blind.

937. Somebody told me that you would like to buy this picture; *if so* (zoo ja), what do you offer me for it?

938. Will you conduct him home? *If not* (zoo niet), I'll do it, and, if possible, nobody must know anything of this.

939. *Then* (dus) you never signified your intention to take back the money?

940. Use your memory, and you will experience a gradual improvement *while* (= *as long as*) you take care not to overload it.

941. Bob Cratchit told them *how* (= *that*) he had a situation in his eye for Master Peter.

942. It was impossible to induce him to be more explicit, try *how* I might.

943. I love her *notwithstanding* (niettegenstaande) our tempers do not exactly agree.

944. *Directly* (onmiddellijk als, as soon as) G. asks you questions, it comes all out.

945. Those bishops were not likely to break away from his rule, *once* (als maar eerst) *the lawn* ¹⁾ was put on them.

DCXX. Wij waren nog geen week in de goudvelden geweest, of ik bemerkte, dat wij schandelijk waren bedrogen.

DCXXI. Het was inderdaad een verschrikkelijk harde winter, *en dit te meer* (all the more so), (naar) zij dacht, *omdat* (that) er zoo vele armen en zoo weinig rijken waren in het dorpje, waar zij woonde.

¹⁾ *Lawn* is very fine linen. It is used for the sleeves of a Bishop's official dress in the English church, and, figuratively, stands for the office itself. *The lawn has been put upon him* means *he has been made a bishop*.

DCXXII. Men vond het beter hem eenigen tijd in een krankzinnigengesticht te plaatsen, uit vrees, dat hij de hand aan zichzelf zou slaan.

DCXXIII. *Zoodra* (directly) ik den brief zag, wist ik, dat mijne vacantie ten einde was.

DCXXIV. *Daar ik toch* (seeing) niets uit hem kon krijgen, ging ik heen.

DCXXV. Hij heeft zich nooit om hem bekommerd, ten minste *voor zoover* (that) ik weet (*of*).

DCXXVI. „Ik heb hem nooit gezien.” — „*Dus* (then) wist gij niet, dat de man mij reeds meer dan eens bedrogen heeft?”

DCXXVII. Gij moet den moed niet opgeven; zoolang er leven is, is er hoop.

DCXXVIII. Zoo gij op tijd terugkomt, zal ik u helpen uwe papieren in orde te brengen en alles voor uw vertrek te regelen.

946. As storms at sea are frequently preceded, as well as succeeded, by a dead calm, so political storms have likewise their calms.

947. They were better armed than the others were, as well as stronger and more desperate.

948. His powers of memory were remarkable — as well for their capacity as tenacity (both for their capacity and tenacity; alike for their capacity and tenacity).

949. His powers of memory were remarkable for their capacity, and for their tenacity as well (en ook, zoowel als).

950. The treaty was no sooner concluded than he formed new designs.

951. Scarcely (hardly) had I arrived at the platform, when I saw the train move slowly in.

952. The Picts were hardly scattered to the winds in a great battle when danger came from the English themselves.

953. In consequence partly of our geographical and partly of our moral position, we have been exempt from many evils.

954. **What with** (deels met) reading, **what with** playing chess, we beguiled our time in the dull place where the continual showers of rain compelled us to stay for two days.

955. They slept in the garden, and **what with** the smell of the bloom, **and** the sight of the green and golden fruit — for in Durban you will see all three on the tree together — it is a pleasant place enough.

956. **Sometimes** people new to the business called Scrooge Scrooge, **sometimes** Marley.

957. **Now** (nu eens) the moon shone in full splendour, **now** (dan weer) a black cloud intercepted her light.

958. His kingdom was **not only** conquered, **but** divided among the soldiers.

959. His death was a great loss for all the poor people in the neighbourhood, for he was **not only** rich, **but also** charitable (**but** charitable **also**).

960. The spirit of the town had never been subdued **either** by fire **or** by hunger.

961. **Neither** fire **nor** hunger could subdue their spirit.

962. They carried on their shoulders **neither more nor less than** (niets meer of minder dan) the very tiger I had shot that morning.

963. **Whether** he did it on purpose **or** not, the result is equally disastrous.

§ 170. *As well as* (*as well . . . as*) and *both . . . and* are much oftener used than *alike . . . and*; *as well*, differing from *as well as* by the omission of the second *as*, is rendered by *en ook, zoowel als*.

Either . . . or is co-ordinating; *whether . . . or* is subordinating.

DCXXIX. Hij dacht, dat zij niet langer dan een uur onderweg zouden zijn; maar deels door de gladheid van den weg, deels doordien hij telkens het kind moest dragen, bereikten zij het dorp eerst, toen het reeds donker was.

DCXXX. Hij ging de fabriek met ons door en verklaarde ons alles met groote duidelijkheid en ook in eenvoudige be-
woordingen.

DCXXXI. Gij moet het òf van avond doen, òf morgen
terugkomen om het werk af te maken.

DCXXXII. Ik weet niet, of hij fortuin zal maken in de
Oost, of daar even ongelukkig zal zijn, als hij hier geweest is.

DCXXXIII. Nu eens rolden de kinderen over elkaar heen,
dan weer liepen ze elkaar juichend achterna.

DCXXXIV. Evenals de nacht ons de sterren toont, die
door het licht der zon onzichtbaar waren, zoo kan de dood
geheimen ontsluieren, die het leven voor ons verbergt.

A P P E N D I X.

Containing, in regular order, all the Rules of Grammar illustrated in
Roorda, 'Engelsche Spraakkunst voor Schoolgebruik', Deel I;
Deel I (Supplement); Deel II, and Roorda, 'Dutch
and English Compared', Part I.

Abbreviations: I = Eng. Spr. Deel I; I, xxix, 3 = Eng. Spr. Deel I, 29^{ste} Les, 3; S = Eng. Spr. Deel I (Supplement); II = Eng. Spr. Deel II; D = Dutch and English Compared, Part I.

THE ARTICLE.

§ 1. There are two articles, the *definite* and the *indefinite*. The def. art. is **the**, which is not declined; the indef. art. is **a** or **an**. **A** is used when the following word, to the ear, begins with a consonant, as *a man, a year, a ewe, a one-eyed fellow*. **An** is used when the following word, to the ear, begins with a vowel, as *an old man, an hour*, and before *h* sounded when the stress is not on the first syllable of the word, as *an hero'ic action*. (I, xiv, 1; I, xiii, 1; S § 3; II § 149.)

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

§ 2. The def. art. is omitted when the noun is taken in a general sense; in this case class nouns are put in the plural, except *man* and *woman*, which may be used in the singular, as *tables are made of wood, iron is useful, life is short; women are more patient than men; man is stronger than woman*. (I, xxxviii, 1 and 2; S § 2, a; II § 146)

§ 3. The def. art. is also omitted:

a. before *names of seasons* taken in a general sense, as *in winter we live here*; (I, xxxix, 1; II § 148, a)

b. before *names of meals* when referring to time, as *just before dinner*; (I, xxxix, 2; II § 148, b)

c. in many expressions such as *to be at school*, *we were at table*, when we refer to the *use* of the building or object denoted by the noun; (S § 2, c; II § 148, c)

d. before *cape*, *lake* and *mount* when immediately followed by a proper name, as *Cape Lizard*, *Lake Erie*, *Mount Hecla*, before names of *single mountains*, as *Hecla*, and before the proper name *after* the word *river*, as *the river Thames*; — the def. art. is used when *of* follows, as *the Cape of Good Hope*, *the Lake of Geneva*, before names of *mountain ranges*, as *the Alps*, and when *river* is omitted, as *the Thames* —; (S § 2, d; II § 148, d)

e. before expressions like *English literature*, *Dresden ware*, *true happiness* when taken in a general sense; (S § 2, b)

f. before *fortune*, *heaven*, etc. when they have the character of proper names; (S § 2, e; II § 148, f)

g. before *most* (= the greater part or number of), *last* (verleden), and *next* (aanstaande), as *most windows*, *last week*, *next year*; (S § 2, g; II § 148, e)

h. before *numerals*, except when they are qualified, and *half* denoting quantity or number, as *nine in* (van de) *ten*, *half of it*, but *the ten which you have bought*, *the second half*; (S § 2, f; D § 5)

i. before *adverbial superlatives*, and when the superlative is not declined in Dutch, as *he writes best*, *where the river is deepest*; (S § 2, h; II § 129)

k. before *names of countries* preceded by an *adjective*, in elevated style and poetry, or when adj. and noun form one name, as *'T is Greece — but living Greece no more*, *modern Athens*; (D § 2)

l. very often, especially in familiar style, before an *adjective* followed by the *proper name of a person* when adj. and proper name form one expression, as *little Mary*; (S § 2, i; D § 3)

m. before *most names of streets*, *bridges*, *buildings*, *harbours*,

etc., especially when the first part is a proper name, as *William Street, Plymouth Harbour*; (S § 2, l; D § 7)

n. before a *title* immediately followed by a proper name, except before some foreign titles such as *emperor, empress, czar, etc.*, and sometimes before *princess* and *lady*, as *Queen Victoria, the Emperor Napoleon, the Princess Maud*. When, however, the title is followed by *of* (in French names by *de*) the def. art. is used, except in appositions, as *the Prince of Orange, William, Prince of Orange*; (S § 2, k; D § 4)

o. before *names of days*, except when there is a qualifying adjunct or clause, as *on Sunday I always go to him; the Sunday which I spent with you*; (D § 6)

p. before words like *mid-day, morning, evening, night* when they denote a point of time, not a space of time, as *at night, towards evening*; (D § 6)

q. after a *superlative* in the translation of *der, van de, onder de = van al de, van alle*, except when a qualifying adjunct or clause follows, as *the best of mothers, the handsomest of all the lasses I knew; also in my heart of hearts, etc.*; (D § 1)

r. in several verbal phrases and adverbial expressions, as *to mount guard, to hide from view*. (S § 2, m; D § 8)

§ 4. The definite article is used:

a. when the noun is taken in a limited sense, as *the life of that man, the obedience you have shown*; (I, xxxviii, 3; II § 146)

b. when one thing is taken as the representative of its class, or when we speak of the whole of the class, as *the table is made of wood, the Dutch have colonies*; see, however, § 3, q; (S § 1, a; II § 147)

c. before the *names of the points of the compass*, as *the north*, except in expressions like *from north to south, north of* (ten noorden van); (S § 1, b)

d. in many expressions in which the noun is really qualified, as *to the surprise of my friend*; (S § 1, c; D § 10)

e. for the sake of emphasis, as *that is the thing I want*; (D § 9)

a. after *all* and *both*, as *all the time*, *both the girls*; (S § 7, a, II § 155)

b. after *half* (*de helft van*), *double*, and *treble* or *triple*, as *half the price*, *double the sum*. (S § 7, b; II § 155)

§ 12. The art., and many other qualifying words, are not repeated before two or more substantives, or before two or more adjectives belonging to the same noun, as *a fork and spoon*, *a good and wise man*. (S § 8)

Repetition takes place:

a. for the sake of emphasis, as *a fork and a spoon*; (S § 8, a; D § 50)

b. when the quality does not belong to the same person or thing; if in this case there is no repetition, the noun is put in the plural, as *the French and the Dutch fleet*, or *the French and Dutch fleets*. (S § 8, b)

THE NOUN.

GENDER.

§ 13. The names of male beings are *masculine*, of female beings *feminine*, and of all other objects *neuter*.

Names of animals indicating the male as well as the female are generally neuter, also names of young animals, and the word *child*, but *lion*, *horse*, *dog*, *fish*, especially names of large animals, are often masculine; *cat*, *hare*, *parrot*, and other names of small animals, are often feminine. (S § 9; II § 91)

§ 14. The words *ship*, *boat*, *frigate*, etc., and all names of ships, are very often feminine. (S § 10; II § 92)

§ 15. In elevated style, and in poetry, abstractions and lifeless objects are often personified so that their names are either masculine or feminine. (S § 11; II § 92)

§ 16. Nouns are said to be of the *common gender* when they apply to both sexes alike, as *parent*, *friend*. The context generally indicates whether [the noun is *masc.* or *fem.* (S § 12; II § 93)

§ 17. Gender is indicated in three ways:

- a. by using different words, as *father*, *mother*; (S § 13, 1)
- b. by different terminations, as *baron*, *baroness*; (S § 13, 2)
- c. by placing some word before or after a noun of common gender, as *man-servant*, *maid-servant*, *turkey-cock*, *turkey-hen*. (S § 13, 3; II § 93)

NUMBER.

§ 18. The plural of a noun is formed by adding *s* to the singular, as *book*, *books*. (I, xiv, 2; II § 94)

§ 19. Nouns ending in a hissing-sound take *es* in the plural, as *box*, *boxes*. Note that *th* is not a hissing-sound, and that, when *ch* = *k*, *s* is added, as *stomach*, *stomachs*. (I, xvi, 1 and 4; II § 95).

§ 20. Most words ending in *o* preceded by a consonant have *es* in the plur., as *hero*, *heroes*. (I, xvii, 3; II § 96)

§ 21. The plural of nouns ending in *y* preceded by a consonant, is formed by changing *y* into *ies*; the *y* remains unchanged after a vowel, as *lady*, *ladies*; *boy*, *boys*. (I, xvii, 2; II § 97)

§ 22. Some nouns ending in *f* and *fe* change *f* and *fe* into *ves*, as *calf*, *calves*; *wife*, *wives*. (I, xvii, 1; S § 14; II § 98)

§ 23. Note the following irregularities:

a. *man*, pl. *men*; *woman*, *women*; *foot*, *feet*; *goose*, *geese*; *tooth*, *teeth*; *louse*, *lice*; *mouse*, *mice*; *child*, *children*; *deer*, *deer*; *sheep*, *sheep*; *swine* (rarely sing.), *swine*; (S § 15; II § 99)

b. *alms* and *means* have the same form for both numbers; (S § 15; II, § 99)

c. words ending in *man* form their plurals by changing *man* into *men* when the part of the word before *man* is a word by itself, as *Dutchman*, *Dutchmen*; but *Roman*, *Romans*; (S § 15; II § 99)

d. names of nations ending in *ese*, and the word *Swiss* have the same form for the sing. and the plur., as *a Chinese*, *the Chinese* (de Chineezen); *a Swiss*, *the Swiss* (de Zwitsers); (S § 15; II § 102)

e. some nouns have two plurals with different meanings,

§ 28. A few nouns, though generally plur. in Dutch, are sing. in English, as *advice*, *information*. (S § 21; II § 104; D § 23)

§ 29. Some nouns have a plur. form but a sing. meaning, and require a singular verb, as *measles*, *physics*. (D § 25)

§ 30. Some nouns used *collectively* have a singular form but a plural meaning, so that they require a plur. verb, as *fish*, *fowl*, *people*.

Even when a numeral precedes, the singular form may be used, if only the objects are not considered individually, as *a hundred salmon*, but *two horses*. (S § 22; II § 101; D §§ 24 and 27)

§ 31. Collectives are followed by a plur. verb when each object or person is considered individually; when the collective is taken as a whole, or a body, the singular is used, as *the crew save themselves in the boats*; *the crew is complete*. (S § 23; D § 26)

§ 32. A sing. noun in Dutch is rendered by a plur. in English:

a. when the noun refers to each individual of a certain number, as *they lost their lives*; but words that do not generally form a plur. are also in this case mostly found in the sing., as *we held our breath(s)*; (S § 24; II § 106; D § 21, 1)

b. to indicate various kinds, or the same thing at various times, as *hopes*, *colds*; (D § 21, 2)

c. when in the translation of expressions like *de Fransche en Hollandsche vloot* the def. art. is not repeated; see § 12, b; (D § 21);

d. when a predicative noun refers to a plur., as *they are soldiers*; see § 5;

e. when a noun is preceded by a numeral larger than *one*, as *two feet*, except:

1. nouns denoting a fixed number, as *two dozen*;

2. when numeral and noun form a compound used as an adjective, as *a three-inch plank*. (S § 25; II § 105)

THE CASES OF NOUNS.

§ 33. There are three cases, the *nominative*, the *possessive* and the *objective*. The nom. and obj. cases are alike in (II § 108)

§ 34. The poss. case is formed by adding 's to the noun, as *a cat's paw*. When the word ends in a hissing sound, this 's forms a separate syllable, as *Dickens's works*.

The possessive is formed by adding an apostrophe or

a. with plurals in *s*, as *our aunts' rooms*;

b. before *sake* when the noun ends in a hissing-sound, as *for Jesus' sake*;

c. with many proper names of some length ending in a hissing-sound, as *Alcibiades' ambition*. (I, xxii, 1 and II § 109)

§ 35. In compound nouns and phrases, the sign of the possessive is affixed to the last word, as *William the Third's reign*. (S § 26; II § 113)

§ 36. For the poss. case we often substitute the objective case, preceded by *of*; the dative relation is rendered by the objective case, or without *to*. (II, § 110)

§ 37. The possessive is often used:

a. with names of persons, as *my boy's friend*;

b. with names of objects personified, as *England's greatness*;

c. with names of animals, as *the lion's den*;

d. in expressions denoting *measure*, especially *time*, as *pound's weight*, *the seven years' war*;

e. in certain expressions, as *a pin's head*. (S § 27; II § 111)

§ 38. Some words such as *house*, *shop*, etc. are omitted after a possessive when there can be no ambiguity, as *I live at my uncle's*. (S § 28; II § 114)

§ 39. The obj. with *of* is always used:

a. in the partitive sense, as *a bit of bread*; note *a (of) book*;

b. after the word *month*, and after ordinal numbers, expressing a date, as *the month of May*; *the 2nd of May*

c. after geographical names except *mount*, *cape*, *lake*, and *river*, as *the kingdom of Holland*, *Mount Hecla*; see § 3, d. § 29; II § 112)

§ 40. The indirect object without *to* is placed before the direct object, except when the latter is a personal pronoun, specially *it*, as *he gives me money*; *give it me*. (I, xxiv, 2nd 3; II § 115)

§ 41. The dative is always preceded by *to* (sometimes *by* *for*):

- a. when emphasis is intended, as *give it to me*, *not to him*;
- b. after some verbs, as *to dedicate*, *to announce*, etc.;
- c. after adjectives, as *it is clear to me*; *impossible for me*. § 30; II § 116)

SOME MISCELLANEOUS REMARKS.

§ 42. In some expressions the noun is left out in English, as *a coach and six*. (S § 44, 10; D § 32).

§ 43. Great attention should be paid to the translation of compounds from Dutch into English. Compare *icy mass*, *mass of ice* with *ijsmassa*. (D § 33)

THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 44. The *comparative* and *superlative* of adjectives are formed by affixing *er* and *est* to the *positive*, or by prefixing *more* and *most*. (II § 117)

§ 45. Note the following modifications in spelling:

- a. adj. ending in *e* drop *e* before *er* and *est*, as *free*, *freer*, *freest*;
- b. adj. ending in *y* preceded by a consonant change *y* into *i* before *er* and *est*, as *happy*, *happier*, *happiest*; — those of one syllable retain the *y*, as *shy*, *shyer*, *shyest*, except *dry* which generally forms *drier* and *driest* —;
- c. monosyllables ending in a single consonant preceded by one vowel, double the last consonant, as *hot*, *hotter*, *hottest*. Note *laxer*, *laxest* because *x* = *ks*. (II § 118)

§ 46. The degrees of comp. are formed by adding *er* and *est*:

- a. with *monosyllables*, as *tall*, *taller*, *tallest*;
- b. with adj. of two syllables ending in *le*, *y*, *ow*, *er*, and often when the adj. is accented on the last syllable, as *nobler*, *mellower*, *politest*;
- c. with some adj., as *handsome*, *cruel*, *common*, *pleasant*. (S § 31; II 119)

§ 47. Most adj. of two syllables (see § 46), and all those of more than two syllables, form the comp. and superl. by *more* and *most*, as *more modest*, *most unfortunate*. (II § 120)

§ 48. Some adj. have irregular degrees of comparison, as *late*, *later* or *latter*, *latest* or *last*; *good* (*well*), *better*, *best*. (II § 121)

§ 49. Note the following irregularities and differences:

- a. when *little* means *klein*, the comp. and superl. are seldom used; *kleiner* and *kleinst* are generally translated by *smaller* and *smallest*; *few* makes *fewer* and *fewest*; — note *lesser* —; (S § 32, a; II § 122, D §§ 36, 167 and note)

- b. *much* is sing., *many* is plur., as *much sand*, *many pens*; (II § 123)

- c. *later* and *latest* refer to time; *latter* and *last* to order, as *take a later train*, *the former and the latter*; (S § 32, b; II § 124)

- d. when *jongste* refers to what was or happened some time ago, it is rendered by *late*, as *the late war*; (S § 32, c)

- e. *nearest* (*naast*, *naastbijzijnd*) refers to distance, both in a literal and in a figurative sense; *next* (*eerstvolgend*) to order; (S § 32, d; II § 125)

- f. *elder* and *eldest* are not used predicatively. They *must* be placed before proper names and before some names expressing relationship, and *may* be used before a few other nouns, such as *friend*, *officer*, with reference to the time during which a person has been a friend or an officer, as *the elder Pitt*, *my eldest friend*; (S § 32, e; II § 126)

g. *farther* refers to distance, *further* means *meer, verdere*; *further* is also used instead of *farther*, as *the farther (further) end, no further remarks*; (S § 32, f; II § 127)

h. some comp. and superl. are formed from adverbs, a few ending in *most*, even from substantives, as *inner, inmost, topmost*. (S § 34, 7; II § 130, 4)

§ 50. Compound adj. consisting of an adj. or adv. and a participle or a word like *cheded, hearted*, which has the form of a past participle, inflect the first part in forming the degrees of comparison, as *worst-behaved, biggest-cheded*. (D § 37)

§ 51. When a noun is qualified by two adj., one of which is compared by adding *er* and *est*, while the other forms its degrees of comparison by prefixing *more* and *most*, that with *er* and *est* comes first, or both take *more* and *most*, as *the best and most honest man, a more neat and attractive girl*. (D § 35)

§ 52. When two things are compared, the comp. is generally used, though the superl. is also often found, especially when there are more than two of the things named, as *the farther end of the table, the youngest of the two boys*. (II § 128)

§ 53. The superl. is strengthened by *very, by far* (following or preceding the superl.), *of all*, as *the very best, the best by far* or *by far the best*. Sometimes two of these are combined, as *the very best of all*.

Veel before a comp. is rendered by *far, much, greatly*, etc., as *far happier*. (S § 34, 6; D § 34)

§ 54. Note the following renderings:

a. *as good as I* (zoo goed als ik), *not so good as I* (niet zoo goed als ik), *not as good as I* (niet even goed als ik); (S § 34, 1; II § 130, 1)

b. *as good as gold, as blind as a bat*, etc.; (S § 34, 2; D § 38)

c. *most happy* (hoogst gelukkig), *the happiest* (de gelukkigste); (S § 34, 3; II § 130, 2)

d. *the sooner the better* (hoe eerder hoe beter), *better and better* (al beter en beter), etc.; (S § 34, 4; II § 130, 3)

e. inferior to (minder dan), *of late years* (in de laatste jaren), etc. (S § 34, 8; D § 36)

§ 55. Before comparatives in *er*, and before the irregular comparatives, the Dutch *niet* is generally translated by *no*, but when the adj. is preceded by *more*, *not* is used, *no more . . . than* being rendered by *evenmin . . . als*, as *no more, not more impudent*, but *no more* (evenmin) *impudent than you are*. (D § 40)

§ 56. At the beginning of a relative clause *than* is sometimes found, which in this case precedes the relative pronoun (in the obj. case), as also the comparative, as *I spoke to your friend, than whom I do not know a nobler man*. This construction is not used in every-day English. (D § 39)

ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS.

§ 57. An adjective used as a noun denotes:

a. the quality taken in the abstract, as *the beautiful* (het schoone); (I, XLIX, 3; II § 131, 1) — when, however, the adj. is not taken in its widest sense, it is not used as a noun in English; it is followed by a substantive (thing, part, plan), as *the best plan will be* (het beste zal zijn), it is rendered by a predicative superlative, as *it is best* (het beste) *not to speak of it*, or a relative clause is used, as *that which is strange* (het vreemde); only occasionally we use the same construction as in Dutch; (S § 35; D § 45)

b. a class of persons possessing the quality, as *the rich*. (I, XLIX, 1 and 2; II § 131, 2, and § 132)

§ 58. The adj. used substantively sometimes denotes a single person, as *my beloved* (mijn geliefde). (D § 46)

§ 59. After *something*, *anything*, *little*, etc. we sometimes replace the adj. by *of* and a noun, especially when the adj. is qualified by an adverb, which before the noun is, of course, rendered by an adj., as *something important* = *something of importance*. (D § 47)

§ 60. Some adj. have become nouns and take a plur. form,

is *mortal*, *mortals*; many of these are used in the plur. only, is *ancients*. (S § 36; II § 133)

§ 61. Note idiomatic expressions like *all sorts of nice things* (allerlei lekkers), *paint it a bright green*, etc. (S § 37; D § 48)

NOUNS USED AS ADJECTIVES. USE OF ONE.

§ 62. Many proper names, especially names of places, have no corresponding adj., but are used as such without any change of form. From names like *Venice*, *Athens*, etc., which are also names of states, are formed *Venetian*, *Athenian*; we read of *Parisian sayings and doings*, but take *the Paris route*; a *Turkish merchant* is a Turk, or lives in Turkey, but a *Turkey merchant* trades to Turkey; we say *West India Company*, *East India service*, but speak of *West Indian produce*, of *East Indian silks*, etc. (S § 38; D § 53)

§ 63. Names of materials are generally used as adjectives without any change of form, as a *bronze lamp*, except *wooden*, *cotton*, *oak(en)*, *leaden*, *flaxen*, *hempen*, *leather(n)*.

Gold, *silk*, and *brass* are used in a literal sense, *golden*, *silken*, and *brazen*, in a figurative and in a literal sense, as a *gold(en) spoon*, *golden hair*. (I, XLVIII)

§ 64. Some other substantives may be used as adjectives, as a *penny stamp*, a *corner seat*. (S § 38)

§ 65. *One*, plur. *ones*, is often used after an adj. as a substitute for a generic name that is named in the sentence, or is sufficiently indicated by the context, as *the pretty one is the girl I mean*; *your little ones*. The attributive adj. followed by *one* often corresponds to a predicative adjective in Dutch, as *our contract is an old one*.

Note expressions like *here is a seat*, *a corner one*. (S § 39; I § 134; D §§ 41 and 43)

§ 66. *One* is not used:

a. immediately after numerals, as *the second chapter and the first*;

b. as a substitute for names of materials and abstract names, as *wet wood and dry, selfish love or unselfish*;

c. generally after comparatives and superlatives, as *the cheapest watch and the dearest*; *one* is sometimes used, especially after a comparative, when the degrees of comparison are formed by *more* and *most*;

d. when we divide into kinds, as *there are two sorts of sheep, black and white*;

e. generally when one adj. is contrasted with another, or when adjectives are used in an enumeration, as *the old school and the new, we have three rooms: a red, a blue, and a brown*. (I, XLVII; S § 39; II § 135; D §§ 42 and 44)

PLACE OF THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 67. As a rule attributive adj., even when there are two or more of them, or when they are accompanied by adjuncts, are placed before the noun they qualify, as *a good book, she is an extremely charitable and, lucky for us, very rich lady*. (S § 40; D § 49)

§ 68. The adj., which in these cases can be easily replaced by a relative clause, is placed after the noun:

a. when it is accompanied by a prepositional adjunct, as *the house so dear to me* (het mij zoo dierbare huis);

b. when it is a participle, with or without adjuncts, which has retained much of its verbal character, as *the path indicated*;

c. when there is an adverbial adjunct denoting measure, as *a ditch ten feet wide* (een 10 voet breede sloot);

d. for the sake of emphasis, generally when there are two or more adj., or when the adj. is qualified by adjuncts, as *a house large and comfortable*. (S § 40, a, b and c; D § 51)

§ 69. The adj. is also placed after the noun:

a. in many titles, as *attorney-general*;

b. with *things* not preceded by the def. art., as *things useful*;

c. when *present* means *aanwezig*, not when it refers to time, as *all the ladies present*, but *the present moment*;

d. when *past* is rendered by *laatste*, as *for two years past* (*in de laatste twee jaar*); not when it means *vroeger*, as *his past behaviour*; in the sense of *verleden* it sometimes precedes, sometimes follows, the noun, as *in times past* or *in past times*;

e. very often in the case of *next* and *last*, as *Monday next*;

f. in many standing expressions, as *the blood royal*. (D § 52)

MISCELLANEOUS.

§ 70. Sometimes an adverb in Dutch is rendered by an adj. in English, especially when we make use of a verbal phrase, as *he did n't pay the slightest attention to it*. (D § 54)

THE NUMERAL.

§ 71. Cardinals are *one*, *two*, *twenty*, *twenty-one* or *one-and-twenty*, *twenty-two* or *two-and-twenty*, *a (one) hundred*, *two hundred and fifty*. (I, LI; II § 136)

§ 72. *Hundred*, *thousand* and *million* are preceded by *a* or *one* when there is no other adjunct. *One* is used in dates, and also for the sake of emphasis, as *I have a hundred things to do*; *in one thousand four hundred*; *give me one hundred, not two*. (S. § 41; II § 137).

§ 73. As far as fifty we may say *one-and-twenty*, etc. instead of *twenty-one* when no larger numeral precedes. (S § 42; II § 138)

§ 74. After hundred we always use *and* before tens and units; if there are no hundreds, *and* is used after *thousand* or *million*, as *two hundred and fifty million three hundred and sixty-five thousand and four*. (II § 139)

§ 75. Numerals may be used as substantives, and then *of* before a following noun, as *these fives*, *hundreds of thousands*.

Million is often used substantively when a numeral precedes, and no other numeral follows, as *two millions of soldiers* (S § 43; II § 140)

§ 76. Note idiomatic expressions like *we two*, etc. (S § 44, 1, 2, 3 and 4; II § 142; D § 55)

§ 77. The ordinals are formed from the cardinals by adding *th*, as *seventh*.

Note the following exceptions: *first, second, third, fifth, eighth, ninth, twelfth, twentieth, thirtieth*, etc. (I, LII; II § 143)

§ 78. Note the fractional numbers *four fifths*, etc., the multiplicatives *once, twice*, etc., idiomatic expressions like *she is second to none*, etc. (S § 44, 5—9; II §§ 144 and 145; D §§ 56 and 57)

PLACE OF THE SUBJECT.

§ 79. The subject is generally placed before the verb.

§ 80. The subject does not precede the verb (or the auxiliary):

a. in interrogative sentences, except when the subject is an interrogative pronoun, or when it is headed by an interrogative word, as *does he see me?* but *who sees me? how many praised him?*

b. when the sentence begins with *never* (*never before, never after, etc.*), *nor, neither, no sooner, scarcely, hardly, nowhere* (*in no country, etc.*), *not only, little, seldom, no more, not until* (*until* belonging to the subordinate clause, *not*, to the principal clause, causing inversion of the subject), all of which have a negative meaning; in this case the principal verb cannot precede the subject, so that in simple tenses *to do* is used, as *never did I see such a fellow; not until I had seen the picture, would I believe what people had told me about it.*

c. when *so* (ook) opens the sentence; as in b, one of the verbs *to have, to be, can, may*, etc. precedes the subject, or *to do* is used, as *I am ready, and so is he; he fell, and so did I;*

when *if* is omitted, in which case one of the forms *had*, *was*, *should*, *could* or *did* opens the sentence, as *had seen me, he would have crossed the street*;

in sentences expressing a wish, and opening with *may*, with an *adverb*, as *may you be happy, long live the queen!*

when the verb in the imperative mood is accompanied a pronoun-subject, as *be thou my comfort*;

after the unemphatic *there*, as *there are many people here.* § 45, a and b; D §§ 58, 59, 61, 65)

81. Inversion of the subject *may* take place:

when an adverbial adjunct opens the sentence, the verb intransitive, or passive, or accompanied by *can*, *may*, etc., the subject is of some length, as *in the middle of the room stood a mahogany table; there is my father, but so he is; in his pocket was found the key we had all been looking for*;

when for the sake of emphasis an adverb is placed at the beginning of the sentence; if the verb is transitive and accompanied by *may*, *can*, etc., an auxiliary is required, *gradually did my friend gain his confidence*;

after *so*, the correlative of *as*, as *as a man lives, so will he die*;

when for the sake of emphasis an adverbial adjunct closely connected with the verb, is placed at the beginning of the sentence, as *up went the windows*;

when a predicative adjective is found at the head of the sentence, especially when the subject is of some length, as *happy is he whose friends were born before him*;

when the object opens the sentence, as *many towns have been*;

in a sentence containing a verb of *saying*, *replying*, when it is placed between two parts of a quotation, or for it, as "Come here," cried I, "and help me." *Quoth* always precedes the subject. (S § 45, c; D §§ 60, 62, 63, 66, 67 and 68)

THE PRONOUN.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 82. The nom. and obj. of the pers. pron. are: *I, me; thou, thee; he, him; she, her; it, it; we, us; you, you; they, them.* (II § 157)

§ 83. Our Dutch pronoun *er*, being a genitive third pers. plur., is rendered by *of them* or left untranslated, as *give me five (of them).* (II § 158)

§ 84. The Dutch gen. in expressions such as *hij is onwaardig*, etc. is translated by *of* + the required pron., as *he is unworthy of you.* (II § 159)

§ 85. Though *er van, hiermee*, etc., are generally rendered by a preposition and a pron., we may occasionally use *thereof, herewith*, etc. (I, XLIV; II § 160; D § 73)

§ 86. *Mee, mede* in expressions like *kom mee, meebrengen*, stands for *met mij, met hem*, etc., and is rendered by *with me, with us*, etc., as *he took it with him; after to bring it is often left untranslated, as have you brought (meegebracht) it?* (D § 74)

§ 87. In expressions such as *it is I who have done it*, the verb *to be* always agrees with *it*. The verb of the relative clause, however, agrees with the noun or pronoun after *to be*, and not with *it*. (S § 46; II § 161)

§ 88. In Dutch we often anticipate the object which is afterwards named in the form of an infinitive or a dependent clause; this is not done in English, as *I am sorry (er rouwig om) that he would not come.*

When, however, the objective clause or infinitive is separated from the governing verb by an adverbial adjunct or predicative adj., *it* is generally used. Even in this case *it* is sometimes omitted, especially before a predicative adj., as *I thought (it) fit to go.* (S § 47; II § 162; D 69, 1, and § 70)

§ 89. When *het* refers to a noun or pron. named before it is rendered by the pron. agreeing in number and gender

with the preceding noun or pron.; when there is no preceding noun or pron. indicating gender and number, *it* is used, as *Who are these ladies? — They (het) are my sisters. — Who is here? — It is we.* (S § 48; II § 163)

§ 90. *Het, er van, er over, dat*, etc. are not translated:

a. after the verbs *shall, will, can, may, must, ought, to have* and *to be*, at the end of a short expression referring to a preceding sentence, as, *I wouldn't do it, even if I could;* (S § 49; II § 164)

b. after many verbs such as *to try, to know, as just try;* (S § 52, D § 69, 2)

c. after adverbs of time such as *when, now, then*, and one of the forms of the verb *to be*, as *now is the time;* (D § 69, 3)

d. in *dat is het* followed by a relative clause, as *that is what I said;* (D § 69, 4)

e. in a few expressions such as *het eens worden*, as *we can't agree.* (S § 52; D § 69, 5)

§ 91. *Het* or *dat* is translated by *so*:

a. after the verbs *to say, to tell, to think, to hope, to suppose* if it stands for a dependent clause, as *Is he ill? — I think so.* Note: *I think not* (*dat denk ik niet*);

b. with the auxiliary *to do* when referring to a verb with or without adjuncts, as *"Come in," he said; and I did so;*

c. when it stands for a predicative noun or adj., as *Are you a soldier? — Yes, I am* (see § 90, a); *I have been so from my eighteenth year.* (S § 50; II § 165)

§ 92. *Ook* is translated by *so*, and *ook niet* by *nor, neither, no more, nor . . . (n)either*, when one of the verbs *to have, to be, can, may*, etc., found in the preceding sentence, is repeated. *To do* is used when the verb is in a simple tense as *I am rich, and so is he; he won't do it, neither will I; he squints, but so do you.*

Note that inversion of the subject takes place. (S § 51; II § 166)

§ 93. In familiar style *of it* is found after nouns denoting time, as *day, week, time*, in connection with the verbs *to*

have and to make, as I shall have a good time of it. (D § 71).

§ 94. Note idiomatic expressions such as, *there is nothing for it but to submit; he lords it over his sisters, I say* (hoor eens), *don't be long*, etc. (S § 52; D §§ 72 and 75).

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 95. The refl. pron. are *myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourself* (sing.), *yourselves* (plur.), *themselves, oneself*. (II § 167)

§ 96. The refl. pron. helps to form the reflexive verb, as *he washes himself*, and is used to impart emphasis to the noun or pronoun to which it belongs, as *he (my father) himself has done it*. (S § 53; II § 168)

§ 97. The pers. pron. is omitted before the refl. pronoun:

- a. when it is not a nominative, as *ask himself*;
- b. after *than* and *as*, as *taller than (as tall as) myself*;
- c. when it is a predicative pron., as *he is himself again*;
- d. when it forms a compound subject with a noun or another pron., as *her sister (she) and myself will come*.

Note that we say *ask me, taller than I*, etc. when there is no emphasis. (S § 54; II § 169)

§ 98. After prepositions the pers. pron. is used instead of the refl. pron., unless emphasis is intended, or the use of the pers. pron. would cause ambiguity, as *he looked about him*, but *she placed the book before herself, not before Mary; he read the letter to himself*.

When the refl. pron. is necessary in the 3rd pers., we also use it in the 1st and 2nd persons. So we say *I read the letter to myself* though *to me* would not cause ambiguity. (S § 55, II § 170)

§ 99. *Wasch u en wasch uzelf* are both rendered by *wash yourself*. (II § 171)

§ 100. *Self* is also used substantively, as *my own self*. Note idiomatic expressions like *I have a house of my own* (*zelf een huis*), etc. (S § 56; D § 75)

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 101. The poss. pron. used adjectively are *my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, there, one's*; the substantive forms are *mine, thine, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs*. *Its* is seldom used substantively.

The substantive forms are never preceded by the def. art. (II § 172)

§ 102. Instead of *my* and *thy* the forms *mine* and *thine* may be used when the following word begins with a vowel, but only in Bible language, elevated style, and poetry, as *Thine eye, my Lord, is on me*. (II § 173)

§ 103. For *this my fault* we generally say *this fault of mine*.

This construction is also used when the noun is preceded by the indef. art., or by a numeral, either definite or indefinite, as *a friend of yours, two friends of mine*. We may, however, also say, *one (two) of my friends*, etc. (S § 57; II § 174)

§ 104. The poss. pron. is strengthened by *own*, as *my own book*.

Note that the word *own* is always preceded by a poss. pron. *Eigen (zelf) huizen, een eigen huis*, etc. are rendered by *houses of one's own, a house of one's own*. (S § 58; II § 175)

§ 105. Before the name of that which immediately belongs to the possessor (part of his body or his dress), we use in Dutch the def. art. whereas the poss. pron. is used in English:

a. when the possessor is the subject of an active sentence, as *he puts his hands in his pockets*;

b. when the possessor is indicated in Dutch by a dative or a refl. pron., as, *she breaks my heart, I've cut my finger*.

When, however, the possessor is the direct object of an active verb, or the subject of a passive verb, the def. art. is used, as *he shot me (I was shot) in the leg*. (S § 59; II § 176; D § 77)

§ 106. *Te mijnent, te uwent* are rendered by *at my house, at your lodgings*. (II § 177)

§ 107. The poss. pron. used substantively may, for the sake of emphasis, be placed at the head of the sentence, when in Dutch we have a possessive adj. or a pers. pron. in the dative (the dative relation is often expressed by *aan* or *voor*), as *mine is the revenge*. (D § 79)

§ 108. The poss. pron. is not used:

- a. in some attributive and adverbial adjuncts, as *at most*;
- b. often when the context makes the pron. unnecessary, as *all through life he has acted nobly*. (D § 76)

§ 109. Note idiomatic expressions like *at the very least, to change one's dress, I beg your pardon*, etc. (S § 60; D §§ 77 and 78)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 110. The demonstratives are *this, these, that, those, he* (hij, degene), *she* (zij, degene), *that* (dat, datgene), *those* (zij, degenen), *yon, yonder, the same, such*. (II § 178)

§ 111. *Yon* and *yonder* are seldom used except in elevated style and in poetry, as *behold yonder moon*. (S § 68, c; II § 179)

§ 112. When a noun is omitted after *this* or *that*, *one* is often used, as *have you bought this (one) or that (one)?* (S § 69; II § 180).

§ 113. With reference to a plural number our *dit* and *dat* are rendered by *these* and *those*, as *those are my books*. (II § 181)

§ 114. The demonstrative pron. is used substantively:

- a. when it precedes the noun to which it refers, as *this is my book*;
- b. after *as* and *like* in expressions like *such fellows as these*;
- c. in expressions such as *from this, this (place), ere this, after this*, where *this* denotes place or time, as *I shall leave this to-morrow*;
- d. when *those* is followed by an attributive adjunct which is, or may be replaced by, a restrictive relative clause, as

those (who were) in the room; before a continuative clause *this*, *that*, *these* may be used as well, as *this*, *which lies here*, *is mine*;

e. *there are (were, etc.) those who*, which renders the Dutch *er zijn (waren, enz.) er, die*;

f. in *that is* (dat is; namelijk), *that* (dat wel), as *He unkind? And that to his mother?*

g. when *that* refers to a preceding *what*, in which case it may be followed by a plur. verb, as *what flowers are to you, that are pictures to me*;

h. when *this* refers to the last-named of two, *that* to the first-named. When pointing back to two persons we generally use *the former* and *the latter*, as *Here are John and Charles, the former on foot, the latter on horseback*. (S § 70; II § 183; D § 80)

§ 115. *Gene* is often translated by *the other*, as *on the other side*. (II § 184)

§ 116. The dem. pron. is sometimes used in Dutch for a pers. pron.; this must not be done in English, as *Your book? I don't know where it (dat) is*; *I asked him where his son was, when the latter (deze) appeared*. (S § 71; II § 182)

§ 117. For *he who*, *she who*, and *those who* we may say *who*, especially in proverbial sayings, as *who loses his due gets no thanks*; for *that which* we often use *what*, as *what you say, is true*.

Whoever (al wie, hij die) is used in elevated style and in Bible language; *whatever* answers to the Dutch *wat ook, al wat, hoegenaamd*, as *whatever you do, is right; there is nothing whatever*. (II § 185)

§ 118. *Die* referring to a singular noun is translated by *the one* (sometimes by *he*, acc. *him*), when it is qualified by a restrictive relative clause, or an attributive adjunct, often beginning with a preposition, as *the one in black is the one I mean*. (II § 185; D § 81)

§ 119. Note idiomatic expressions like *this size* (zoo groot), *this much* (zooveel), *at this day* (nog heden ten dage), *of the*

kind = *of that kind*, where the def. art. has preserved its demonstrative force. (S § 72; D §§ 82–84)

§ 120. For the use or the omission of the indef. art. after *such*, see § 10, a.

§ 121. *Such* used predicatively means *zoodanig*, *zoo groot*, *van dien aard*, as *such was his grief, that it broke his heart*. (II § 187)

§ 122. *Dezulken (zij)*, *die* is rendered by *such as* or by *those who*, as *I speak to such as (those who) know him*. (II § 188)

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 123. The interrog. pron. are *who*, *what*, and *which*. The possessive of *who* is *whose*, the objective is *whom*; the dative relation is always expressed by *to whom*. *Which* and *what* are not declined. (I, XLIII, 1; II § 189)

§ 124. *Who* applies to persons and is entirely indefinite, as *who is there?* (I, XLI, 2 and 3; II § 190)

§ 125. *What* is used substantively and adjectively. When used substantively, it applies to things only, and is entirely indefinite; when used adjectively, it applies to persons and things indefinitely, and also asks after the kind, so that we often translate *wat voor*, *wat voor een*, as *What is there? What man is he?* (I, XLIII, 4 and 6; II § 191)

§ 126. *What* used adjectively is also used in exclamations, and takes the indef. art. whenever the substantive allows of it; see § 10, a.

§ 127. *Which* applies to persons and things, and is used with and without a noun. It inquires after one or more out of a certain number, as *of which eye are you blind? Which of you went there?* (I, XLIII, 5; II § 193)

§ 128. In colloquial style the preposition is often placed at the end of an interrogative sentence, as *What are you laughing at?* (II § 194)

§ 129. Note idiomatic expressions such as *what if he should see us?* etc. (D § 97; S § 67)

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 130. The rel. pron. are *who*, *which*, *that*, *what*, and *as*. The poss. and obj. of *who* are *whose* and *whom*; *to* is not omitted in expressing a dat. relation.

Whose is sometimes used for *of which*, especially in elevated style and in poetry. Prepositions may be placed before *whom*, *which* and *what*; in colloquial English the prep. is often put after the verb, as *the book that I am looking for*. *That* and *as* are never preceded by a prep., so that the prep. is put at the end of the sentence.

The prep. which belongs to the verb of the principal sentence must precede the rel. pron. *what*, as *He laughed at what (= at that which) I said*; but *I have done what (= that which) I now repent of*. (II § 195; S § 66; D § 87).

§ 131. *Who* is used when the antecedent is the name of a person, either sing. or plur., as, *the man whom I saw*. The antecedent is sometimes omitted; see § 118. (I, XLII, 2; II § 196)

§ 132. In fables *who* is used when the antecedent is an animal or a thing personified, as *a bear who lived near a wood*. (D § 89)

§ 133. *Which* is used in reference to names of things and animals, and when the antecedent is a sentence, as *He refused, which grieved me*. It may be used adjectively, and then refers to names of persons also, as *John and William, which boys I had not seen before*. (I, XLII, 3; II § 197)

§ 134. When the antecedent is a collective noun denoting persons, *who* is used when the persons are taken individually, *which* when they are taken collectively, as *the committee which was (who were) assembled*. (S § 64; II § 198; D § 85)

§ 135. *Of whom* and *of which* are generally placed after the words they determine; they always follow when they qualify an adjunct beginning with a prep., as *There he spent nine happy years, after the first of which he married*.

When they qualify the object of a relative clause, this object is placed after the verb, or before *of which* or *of whom*, as *a cake, half of which I ate (of which I ate half)*. (D § 88)

§ 136. That is often used instead of *who* and *which*, but only when the relative clause is *restrictive*, not when it is *continuative*. It is restrictive when it *limits* or *restricts* the meaning of the antecedent, when it gives an answer to the question *what person* or *what thing*.

It is continuative when it does not limit the antecedent, but contains some explanation, or stands for a co-ordinate sentence.

When the relative clause is restrictive, there is no comma, as *Is that the horse that (which) you have bought?* but *This horse, which was bought yesterday, is mine*. (I, XLII, 4 and 6; II § 199)

§ 137. The restrictive *that* is generally found:

a. after *who*, as *who, that knows him*; for the sake of euphony *that* is also used when the preceding *who* is not the antecedent, as *It is not always he who sings loudest that has the lightest heart*;

b. after *nothing*, *something*, *anything*, *everything*, *all* (alles), as *All that is here, is mine*; *allen die* is rendered by *all who*, *al hetgeen* referring to an enumeration is translated by *all which*, as *a stove, a table, four chairs, all which had to be sold*;

c. after a superlative, as *he is the best man that I know*;

d. when the antecedent consists of two or more nouns which cannot all of them take *who* or *which*, as *persons and places that I know*;

e. in expressions like *wretch that you are*. (S § 62; II § 200; D § 86)

§ 138. *What* is used only when there is no antecedent; it may be followed by a noun, as *He told me what he knew*; *He gave me what money he had*.

Note that we say *He did not even look at her, which surprised me*, but *What surprised me was that he did not even look at her*, or *What surprised me, he did not even look at her*. (II § 201)

§ 139. *As* is used when the antecedent is *such*, as *such books as I have bought*. (S § 65; II § 202)

§ 140. A construction without a rel. pron. may be used:

a. when the rel. pron. is restrictive and in the objective case, as *Here is the book I bought*;

b. when the principal sentence begins with *there is* (*was*, *etc.*), *it is* (*was*, *etc.*), *here is* (*was*, *etc.*), as *There is nothing puts me out so much*;

c. when the rel. pron. would be followed by *there is*, *there was*, *etc.*, as *It might be a claw for the flesh there is upon it*;

d. instead of a rel. clause opening with the predicative *that*, as *the girl you are* (*wat meisje je bent*). (II § 203; D § 90)

§ 141. The rel. pron. which forms part of a dependent clause or infinitive construction, is often placed in English before the principal sentence, as *something which it is quite impossible to describe*. (II § 204; D § 92)

§ 142. The acc. with infin. constr. may be used when the acc. is a rel. pron., as *the man whom I knew to be honest*. (D § 93)

§ 143. In English we often use a rel. pron. in an infin. or participial constr. while in Dutch we have a sentence containing a pers. pron., a demonstrative, or one of the words *daarop*, *daarmee*, *etc.*, as *Here is the house to see which I have travelled so far*. (D § 94)

§ 144. Before verbs of *being*, *seeming*, and *considering*, the rel. pron. *what* is often used when the Dutch translation requires *iets*, *dat*, or has the predicative noun of the English relative clause as an antecedent, as *I saw what appeared like a waggon*; *we were in what* (*een kamer, die*) *was considered to be the best room*. (D § 95)

§ 145. An adjective in Dutch is sometimes rendered by a relative clause, as *He told me what had happened* (*het gebeurde*); *Here is the book I have promised* (*het beloofde boek*). (D § 96; S § 67)

§ 156. *Both* means *not one, but the one as well as the other*. So our *beide(n)* is translated by *two* when it is not emphatic, as *I have lost both my gloves; one of you two*. (S § 79; II § 215)

§ 157. *All* corresponds to our *al, geheel, alles, allen*; it is sing. and plur., and is used with and without a noun. *Whole* corresponds to our *geheel*, not to *al*, as *All the children wanted a whole apple*.

All denotes the whole class of objects or persons taken collectively, *everything, everybody, every one* denotes all of a class or series taken one by one, as *I know all, everything*.

Note idiomatic expressions such as, *all the better, it is all one, he lost his all*, etc. (S § 80; II § 212; D §§ 103, 104 and 107)

§ 158. *Much* and *many* are used substantively and adjectively; *much* is sing., *many* is plur., as *not many have much patience*. *Much* is also an adverb, as *he is much poorer*. Note: *many a (menig) man; much (zoowat) the same; as many as (wel) twenty*, etc. (S § 81, 1; II § 213; D § 101)

§ 159. *A few* means *enkele, eenige*; *few* means *weinige*. *A little* is rendered by *een weinig, eenig, wat*; *little* by *weinig*. *Not a few* (niet weinigen); *not a little* (niet weinig). (S § 81, 2; II § 214)

§ 160. *Several* preceded by a poss. pron. has a distributive sense, and is rendered by *ieder zijn eigen, ieder voor zich, respectief*, as *their several names*. (D § 110).

THE VERB.

CONJUGATION.

§ 161. Verbs are of the *regular* or of the *irregular* conjugation. A verb is called *regular* when its *past tense* and *past participle* are formed by adding *ed* to the *infinitive*. All the other verbs are *irregular*.

The personal inflections of the two classes are the same. (S § 82; II §§ 2, 3 and 8)

Note: *none the better, we . . . none of us, none too often, nothing desirous*, etc. (S § 75; II § 207; D §§ 106 and 109)

§ 151. *Some* is used when we will not name, or cannot name the exact number or quantity, person or thing. *Any* is altogether indefinite, and corresponds to our *welke (wie, wat) dan ook, ieder*. The compounds *some one, any one, something, anything*, etc. show the same difference as *some* and *any*, as *Some said I should not have given him anything*.

Iemand followed by a qualifying adjunct is rendered by a *man* (woman, etc.), as *He is a man who knows everything; she is the woman to try*.

Some before a numeral means *ongeveer*, as *some twenty*.

Note: *Have you any (ook) flowers? not anything like* (lang niet) etc. (I, xxvi, 2; S § 76; II § 208; D §§ 102 and 105)

§ 152. *Other* is used both adjectively and substantively. As a substantive it takes *s* in the plur., and 's or ' in the poss., as *others, the other's money*. Note the difference between *another* (nog een) *book* and *an other* (een ander) *book*. Used substantively, *another* means *een ander* and *nog een*. (S § 77; II § 209)

§ 153. *Each* is used both adjectively and substantively. It refers to a def. number, and also denotes one individual (person or thing) taken separately, as *each of us; each star has its own light*.

Every is used adjectively only. It names one but means all, as *every room has a door*. *Each of* = *every one of*. (S § 78; II § 210)

§ 154. When *every one, everybody* refers both to males and females, *they, their* is often used in connection with it to avoid the awkward *he or she, him or her*, as *Everybody had been very kind in their way, all her uncles and aunts*. (D § 108)

§ 155. *Either* means *any of two* and *each of two*; *neither* means *none of two*. They are both used adjectively and substantively, and are always singular, as *either may have done it, on (n)either side*. (S § 79; II § 211)

§ 165. An alphabetical list of irregular verbs is found in I, pp. 171—176; some additions to this list in S § 87; a complete list arranged in three divisions, with the compounds and a great many idiomatic expressions in II §§ 9—12.

TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

§ 166. Intransitive verbs often pass into transitive, as, *he dies a cruel death*. Dutch and English usage, however, do not always correspond, as *I have danced till I am tired* (ik heb mij moe gedanst). (S § 88; II § 13)

§ 167. Some verbs are intransitive in Dutch, transitive in English, as *to obey* (gehoorzamen aan), etc. (S § 89)

§ 168. The causative verbs *lay, fell, rear* or *raise, set, drench* correspond to the intrans. verbs *lie, fall, rise, sit, and drink*.

Many intrans. verbs are used as causatives without any change of form, as *I stopped the carriages*. (S § 90; II § 14)

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

§ 169. The refl. verb is conjugated with the help of the refl. pron. (II § 15)

§ 170. Many verbs are refl. in Dutch, but not in English. This is nearly always the case when the Dutch verb is necessarily reflex., and when the context shows that the object of the action is the same as the subject, as *he is dressing for dinner*. (S §§ 91 and 92; II §§ 16 and 17; D § 146)

§ 171. Note: *to overeat oneself, to avail oneself of*, etc. (D § 147)

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 172. Impersonal constructions without *it* are very rare, as *methinks, methought, me lists, meseems*.

§ 173. As a rule the impers. verb in English corresponds to the impers. verb. in Dutch, as *It will soon clear up. It is*

often the provisional subject, while the real subjects follows in the form of an infin. or a dependent clause; in this case the verb is improperly called impersonal, as *It is true that he will come.* (II §§ 18–19)

§ 174. Note differences between Dutch and English usage such as *I am sorry* (het spijt mij), etc. (S § 93; II § 20)

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

§ 175. The pass. voice is formed by prefixing the various parts of the verb *to be* to the past partic. of the verb. (S § 94; II § 21)

§ 176. The obj. of the act. verb becomes the subj. of the pass. verb; so we see that only transitive verbs allow of a pass. construction. The obj., however, need not be the *direct* obj., as in Dutch, it may also be the *indirect* obj., and the *prepositional* (oorzakelijk) obj. Note the following rules:

a. The direct obj. becomes the subj. of the pass. verb, as *I have bought the house; the house has been bought by me.*

b. When the act. verb is accompanied by two objects, a *direct* obj., and an *indirect* obj. which need not take *to*, either obj. may become the subj. of the pass. verb. When the dative is a *pronoun*, *to* may be omitted in the pass., not when it is a noun, as *I sent him a book; he was sent a book; a book was sent (to) me; but a book was sent to my father.*

c. When the verb requires the dative with *to* (see S § 30, a), only the dir. obj. may become the subj. of the pass. verb, as *I explained it to him; it was explained to him.*

d. Some verbs are accompanied by two accusatives, as *to teach, to ask.* They allow of two pass. constructions, as *I teach him English; he is taught English; English is taught him.*

e. *To laugh at, to think of*, etc. may be considered as transitive verbs. They are accompanied by a prepositional obj., which may become the subj. of the pass. verb, as *I laugh at him; he is laughed at.*

f. Verbal phrases such as *to set fire to, to take care of*,

consisting of noun + verb + preposition, take a prepositional object, which may become the subj. of the pass. verb. But the verbal phrase itself also contains an object, which may become the subj. of a pass. sentence, especially when the obj. is accompanied by an attributive adjunct. So we generally say *It is taken care of*, but *Great care is taken of it*. (S § 95; II § 22)

§ 177. Pass. sentences such as *er werd gedanst* cannot be translated literally; the verb is put in the act. voice, or some other construction is used, as *we danced*, *the ball lasted*. (S § 96; II § 23)

§ 178. When a Dutch pass. sentence opens with *er*, this *er* generally remains untranslated, except when the subj. is an infin. or a depend. clause; in this case *er* is rendered by *it*, as *Much was done by him*, *It was resolved to do it*. (S § 97; II § 24)

§ 179. The Dutch infin. sometimes has an act. form but a pass. meaning, and is rendered by a pass. infin. in English:

a. After the verb *zijn*, and its substitutes *blijven*, *staan*, and *vallen*, as *It is to be found*; *It is (valt) not to be denied*. When, however, the infinitive is preceded by an adj., we use the act. infin., as *It is easy to see*.

Note: *a horse not to be tamed* (een niet te temmen paard).

b. Sometimes after verbs of *seeing*, *hearing*, *allowing*, *causing* and *commanding*, as *I allow it to be done*. After verbs of *seeing* and *hearing* the past participle is used instead of the pass. infin., as *I see it done*. (S § 98; II § 25)

§ 180. A pass. meaning is sometimes expressed by an intransitive verb, as *The book sells well*. (D § 142)

§ 181. A few intransitive verbs in Dutch correspond to pass. verbs in English, as *the ship is wrecked*; *it was blown out*. (D § 143)

§ 182. Some refl. verbs in Dutch are rendered by a pass. in English, as *I am resolved to be revenged on him*. (D § 144)

§ 183. Note the idiomatic expressions in D § 145.

§ 184. *Worden* is rendered by *to become, to turn, to grow, to get*. *To become* simply indicates a change, as *you have become rich*; *to turn* expresses a sudden change, as *he turned pale*; *to grow* denotes a gradual change and natural development, as *he grows tall*; *to get* implies exertion, and is often used, especially in familiar style for the other renderings of *worden*, as *he got very clever*; *they got married*, *it is getting dark*.

Note *to fall ill* (*ziek worden*), etc. (S § 99; II p. 223, note 1; D § 126)

THE PROGRESSIVE FORM.

§ 185. The *progr. form* is made up of the various forms of the verb *to be* and the pres. participle of the verb. *I write* is called the *simple form*, the corresponding *progr. form* is *I am writing*.

§ 186. The *progr. form* expresses the *continuance* of the action over some time. If we do not want to express that the action is going on at the time of which we speak, the simple form is used, as *He was writing a letter when I entered*, but *He wrote a letter yesterday*.

§ 187. The simple form is used:

a. when the action or state is mentioned merely as such, as *I have spoken to his father*;

b. when the verb expresses an action which is of very short duration, as *I addressed him when he entered the room*;

c. to express custom or habit, as *I go to school every day*;

d. of verbs expressing how we *feel* towards persons or things, as *I have loved her all my life*; *I despise it*;

e. of verbs of *knowing*, and of those which indicate the actions of the *senses*, as *I know (fancy, suppose, etc.) that you are right*; *We see him come*. (I, xxxvii; II § 26)

THE GERUND.

§ 188. The name of *gerund* is given to the substantive form of a verb ending in *ing*, as *burning*. It may be formed from

a verb *without* or *with* adjuncts, and is treated in every respect like a noun, as *singing, your beautiful singing, the singing of that boy, that boy's singing, laughing at a person behind his back*; sometimes it is put in the plur., as *these are strange doings*. (I, LXIII—LXV; II §§ 29 and 33)

§ 189. The gerund must be used:

a. after *prepositions*, as *by going there*; note that with *after* we generally use the simple form of the gerund instead of the compound with *having*, as *after listening* = *after having listened*;

b. after a few words and expressions, as *I cannot help, I have done*, as *he could not help laughing*; after *busy* we occasionally use *in*, as *he is busy (in) arranging his books*;

c. after *worth*, as *it is worth speaking of*. (II § 30; S § 100; D § 135)

§ 190. When in Dutch a noun is qualified by an infinitive phrase, we generally have in English the noun followed by a preposition (mostly *of*) and a gerund, as *the habit of swearing, no reason for doing it*. (S § 101; II 32; D § 137).

§ 191. The gerundial construction is often used instead of a dependent clause. If the subject of the depend. clause is a pers. pron., the gerund is preceded by the corresponding poss. pron.; if the subj. is a noun, the genitive of that noun accompanies the gerund. When, however, the subj. of the subordinate clause is the same as that of the principal clause, it is not expressed before the gerund, as *I insist upon going there (upon your going there; upon your brother's going there)*.

The sign of the genitive is often omitted, especially when the subj. is the name of a thing, as *I never heard of anybody going there; on account of the door being open*. (II § 34)

§ 192. A relative clause is sometimes replaced by a gerund preceded by *of*; the same construction following the verb *to be*, is found instead of the pass. voice, as *a husband of her parents' choosing; this food is of my own cooking*. (D § 136)

§ 193. Instead of the progr. form of the pass. voice we sometimes meet with *to be* followed by a gerund, as *the ship is being built, or the ship is building*.

When, however, the use of the gerund would cause ambiguity, the progr. form of the pass. must be used, as *my father is being shaved*. We always say *to be missing*, *to be wanting*. (S § 102; II § 36)

§ 194. In compounds like *hiding-place*, *walking-stick* we have a *gerund*, not a pres. participle. (II § 37)

§ 195. After some verbs such as *to begin*, *to continue*, *to cease*, *to stop*, *to delay*, etc., the direct obj. is often a gerund instead of an infin., as *he declined giving (to give) his opinion*. (D § 134)

§ 196. Note idiomatic phrases like *the garden wants weeding*; *I've torn my trousers climbing trees*. (S § 103)

THE INFINITIVE.

§ 197. The infinitive *without to* is used:

a. after *can*, *may*, *will*, *shall*, *must*, and often after *need* and *dare*, **not** after *ought*, as *I can come*; *he need not come*; but *he ought to come*;

b. after verbs of *seeing*, *hearing*, and *feeling*, and after *to let*, *to make*, *to bid*, and *to have* (laten, zien), but not when these verbs are in the pass. voice, as *I see him come*; *he makes me do it*; but *he is seen to come*, *I was made to do it*;

c. after *had better* (*had best* is rarely used), *had rather*, *had sooner*, *had as soon*, as *you had better go*;

d. after *better than*, *rather than*, *sooner than*, *more than*, as *sooner than leave you*;

e. after *cannot* (*could not*) *but* and *can but*, as *I cannot but hate that man*;

f. in elliptical sentences, exclamations or interrogations, with the omission of *can*, *shall*, *should*, etc., as *Why not go there?* *You betray your country?*

g. to avoid the repetition of *to* when two or more infinitives are named in immediate succession; in this case emphasis requires the repetition, as *I hope to hear and (to) see much*. (S § 108; II §§ 42–43; D § 127)

§ 198. The infinitive is used:

a. instead of an adverbial clause of condition, as *To hear him talk, one would suppose that he knew everything*;

b. instead of an adverbial clause of time, as *I was very much frightened to see him enter*;

c. instead of an adv. clause of result, *Talk with him so as to make him see the necessity of it*;

d. instead of a relative clause, as *He found nothing to do*;

e. after an adj., to denote in what the quality mentioned becomes apparent, as *he is quick to learn*; expressions like *it was a silly thing to do*, belong to the same class;

f. after *is sure*, *is certain*, *is likely* instead of *shall* (*will*) *surely*, *certainly*, *probably*, as *he was sure to come back*;

g. after words like *how*, *where*, *when*, *by which* instead of a depend. clause, generally with *kunnen* or *zullen*, as *I don't know how to find it*;

h. in some idiomatic phrases, as *to begin with*, *so to say*, etc.; note the omission of the infin. in familiar style in expressions like *He says he'll come, but he is not likely to*. (D §§ 128, 130 and 131)

§ 199. We often find in English a construction with *for* and an infinitive instead of a dependent clause, as *It is too difficult for you to do it*; *I was too tired for it to keep me awake*. (S § 109; D § 129)

§ 200. After verbs of *seeing*, *hearing* and *feeling* we use the infin. or the form in *ing*, as *I see him come (coming) to us*. If we pay special attention to the *action*, we use the infin., as *I have never heard her sing (not singing)* because I only care for the *singing*, not for *her*.

Note *he came running to me* (he came to tell me = he came in order to tell me), *I stood listening* (I stood and listened), etc. (S § 104; II § 31; D § 133)

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

§ 201. *I know him to be a good man*, is an instance of the construction called *accusative with infinitive*. This constr. is used:

a. after verbs of *commanding, desiring, causing, and allowing*, as *He wished me to do it*;

b. after verbs of *seeing, hearing, and feeling*, as *I felt it creep*;

c. after verbs of *knowing, and declaring*, as *He fancied it to be right*.

The accusative is a refl. pron. when it is the same as the subj. of the principal clause, as *He knew himself to be right*. (I, LXVI; II §§ 38–40; S § 107)

§ 202. When the person or object denoted by the acc. undergoes the action, we use the *pass. infin.*, when it performs the action, the *act. infin.* is employed, as *I wish the window to be shut, I wish him to shut the window*. (I, LXVII; II § 41)

§ 203. Note that *to know* (zien, hooren), *to find* (zien), *to hear* (hooren) generally have the *infin. without to* after the acc., as *I never knew him tell a lie; I found him enter the room, I hear him come*; but *to know* (weten), *to find* (bevinden), have the *infin. with to*, as *I know him to be very kind; I found it to be so*, and *to hear* (vernemen) is followed by a subordinate clause, as *I hear that he will come*.

We sometimes use the *infin. with to* after verbs of *seeing, hearing, and feeling*, as *I felt it to be so*. (II § 42; D § 132)

§ 204. The verbs that take the acc. with *infin.* after them, may be put in the *pass. voice*. The acc. becomes the subj. of the *pass. verb*, and the *infin.* is always preceded by *to*, as *He was never known to tell a lie*; see § 197, b. (II § 43)

PARTICIPLES.

§ 205. A participial construction often takes the place of a dependent clause, as *Not knowing what to say, I remained silent; I saw a child carried by a man*; it may be headed by *as, though*, etc., as *When done, it is very nice*. (I, XXXVI, 6; D § 138)

§ 206. When the subject of the dependent clause is the same as that of the principal sentence, the dependent clause

may be replaced by a *dependent participial construction*; when the two subjects are different, we call the constr. *nominative absolute*, or *independent participial construction*, as *The book, lying on the table, could be seen by everybody*; *The book lying on the table, everybody could see it*.

We sometimes omit the *subject* of the nominative absolute, sometimes the present participle, as *Frankly speaking, what is the use of all this?* *Dinner over, we left the room*. (S § 105; D § 139)

§ 207. The independent participial construction allows of a preposition — especially *with* — to be placed at the head, so that there is an accusative instead of a nominative. The Dutch translation requires a depend. clause, as *We could do everything with her looking on*; *On her entering the room, I saw what she held in her hand*. (D § 140)

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 208. For the *subjunctive mood*, see D §§ 148—151.

THE USE OF THE TENSES.

§ 209. The use of the tenses in English is much the same as in Dutch. The following rules mark the difference.

§ 210. In Dutch the *pres. tense* is often used instead of the *future*. This is done in English only in adverbial clauses, as *I shall come to you as soon as I am ready*; but *the man who will come to me to-morrow*. (S § 110; II § 45)

§ 211. To express a *near future*, or an *intention*, or when the time of the action is named, *to be going* is often used, especially when in Dutch we use, or may use *gaan*, as *He was going to speak to me when somebody entered*; *We are going to Italy next winter*. (S § 111; II §§ 46, 47 and 77)

§ 212. The *past tense* is used when the time in which the action took place is entirely past. In this case we often have in Dutch the *perfect tense*, as *I saw him yesterday*. (I, LVIII; II § 48)

§ 213. The *perfect tense* is used when the time of the action is not *absolutely* separated from the present moment. In Dutch the *pres. tense* is often met with when the action or state has lasted some time, and continues to the time in which we speak, as *I have finished my work, I have lived (woon) here since July.* (I, LIX; II § 49)

§ 214. Note: *I wish (wou) I had him here* (for *I wish* we sometimes use *I would* or *would*, as *Would to God I had known all this*); *It is in the house, but I forget* (ben vergeten) *where.* (S § 112; II §§ 50, 51 and 82)

THE VERB "LATEN".

§ 215. In translating *laten* we must be careful to consider whether the object *performs* or undergoes the action denoted by the following verb, as *Let him say it; Let it be said.* See § 179. (S § 113)

§ 216. Speaking to a person, we say *Go! Come!* In calling upon ourselves or upon a third person to do a thing, we use *Let*, as *Let us go; Let it be put in readiness.* For the omission of *to*, see § 197, b. (S § 113, a; II § 88)

§ 217. *Laten* principally denotes:

a. *allowance*, and is then rendered by *to let, to allow, to permit, to suffer*, as *I permitted him to come; I suffered it to be done;*

b. *cause*, and is expressed by *to cause, to get, to have, and to make.* *To cause* is not used in every-day language, as *He caused canals to be dug.* *To get* is used in familiar language, or when there is some difficulty to be surmounted; the *past partic.* is used instead of the *pass. infin.*, as *I got him to do it; I get it done.* *To have* is used to denote that an action is not performed by the subject, but by some other person; it does not presuppose reluctance on the part of the performer, as *I shall have him do it.* Instead of the *pass. infin.* the *past partic.* is used, as *I have my hair cut.* *To make* implies some degree of compulsion; it is only followed by an *obj.* and an *active infin.*, as *I shall make him do it;*

c. *command*, and is then rendered by *to bid, to tell* (fol-

lowed by an *active* object only), *to order, to command, to desire*, as *Bid the gentleman come in; Tell the coachman to drive faster.* (S 113, b-d; II § 89)

§ 218. Note: *It may be imagined* (het laat zich denken); *it cannot be imagined* (het laat zich niet denken), *I kept him waiting*, etc. (S § 114; II § 90; D § 125)

THE VERB "MOETEN."

§ 219. The Dutch *moeten* is rendered by:

a. *must* in the pres. tense, and by *to have, to be obliged*, etc. in all the tenses when it denotes a necessity or a command, as *You must come back; he had to do it*; note that in indirect quotations *must* is also used in the past tense, as *I told him that he must come back*;

b. *must* in the pres. and past tenses when it means *cannot but*, as *You must have seen it, if you had been there*;

c. *to have*, especially to express a duty which is acknowledged as such, as *I have to write a few letters*;

d. *should* or *ought* when it means *behooren, eigenlijk moeten*, as *He should (ought to) have done it*;

e. *to be*, to denote an arrangement made *by* or *for* a person; when the arrangement is made by Providence, we call it *predestination*, as *I was (moest, zou) to be here at two.* (I, xxxiii; S § 117; II §§ 83-87; § 59, § 76 and § 61)

§ 220. Note: *He is said (moet) to be ill; He could not fail (moest wel) to see it*, etc. (S § 118, D §§ 113-114)

TO DO.

§ 221. *To do* is either a *notional* or an *auxiliary* verb. The 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. pres. tense indic. mood of the notional verb, are *thou doest* and *he does* or *he doeth*, of the aux. verb *thou dost* and *he does* or *he doth*. (II § 52)

§ 222. The aux. verb *to do* is used only in the *simple* tenses (*pres. and past*), and in the *imperative*.

It is not used with *to have, to be, can, may, must, shall*,

will and *ought*, except that with *to have* and *to be* it may form an emphatic imperative, as *don't be stupid*.

§ 223. *To do* is used:

- a. in *negative* sentences with *not*, as *I don't care*;
- b. in *interrogative* sentences, except when the subj. is put at the beginning of the sentence, as *Whom did you see?* but *Who saw you?*
- c. in *affirmative* sentences for the sake of emphasis, as *I do like him*; *He did do his best*;
- d. often when there is inversion of the subject, as *Never did I see such a fellow*; see §§ 80—81;
- e. to avoid the *repetition* of a verb or predicate, as *I like him, as much as you do*; *Nobody likes his child better than I do this poor girl*. (II §§ 53—55; S § 115)

§ 224. In poetry, in elevated style, in the language of the Bible, and for the sake of emphasis, *to do* may be omitted in questions and negations.

Also in 'every-day English the omission of *to do* is sometimes met with, as *I know not*; *how came it?* etc.

When *to have* is a notional verb, or is rendered in Dutch by *laten*, *to do* is often used, as *Didn't you have any money?* *He didn't have it done*. (D § 124; S § 116)

TO HAVE AND TO BE.

§ 225. *To have* is either a notional verb or an aux. verb of tense. In familiar style the notional verb is often replaced by *to have got*, as *I have (got) a pen*. (II §§ 56 and 58)

§ 226. All verbs in the act. voice are conj. with *to have*, as *he has fallen*.

In expr. like *he is come*, *the glass was broken*, the past part. has passed into an adj., so that we have no perf. or pluperf. tense, but a pres. or a past tense. (II § 57; S § 120)

§ 227. *To have* renders *laten* and *moeten*, see § 217, b, and § 219, a.

§ 228. *To have* may mean *to witness*, *to experience*, *to see*, as *He had two horses killed under him*. (II § 60; S § 119)

§ 229. *To be* is used:

- a. in the sense of *to exist*, as *Whatever is, is right*;
- b. to form the predicate with an *adj.* or a *noun*, as *I am rich; he is a soldier*;
- c. to form the *passive*, as *it was brought*;
- d. to form the *progr. form*, as *she is singing*;
- e. to denote an arrangement, see § 219, e;
- f. to render *liggen*, *staan*, and *zitten*, which are often used in Dutch instead of *zijn*, as *Where are (zitten) the boys?*
- g. in many idiomatic phrases, as *how is (komt) it*; *to be right*, *to be late* (te laat), etc. (S § 121; II § 61 and §§ 63–64; D § 112)

§ 230. In conditional clauses the past tense of the subj. mood is often formed with *were to*, as *were he (if he were) to hear this*. (II § 62)

§ 231. Ellipsis of *to be* with its subject, see D § 111.

CAN AND MAY.

§ 232. *Can* is always a notional verb, *may* is either a notional verb or an aux. verb. (II § 65)

§ 233. *Can* denotes *power*, *ability*, *may* expresses *permission*, *probability*, as *I can come* (I am able to come), *I may come* (it is possible that I shall come; I am allowed to come). *Can* and *may* are used in the simple tenses only; in compound tenses we must use *to be able*, *to be allowed*, etc. (I, xxxii and lx; II §§ 66–67)

§ 234. *Kunnen* with a negation is rendered by *can*, as *I could scarcely expect to see him*; we sometimes use *to be unable*, *to fail*, etc., as *I failed to see it*. (II § 68; S § 123; D § 115)

§ 235. *May* is often a mere aux. of the subjunctive, as *may the King live!* (S § 122; II § 69)

§ 236. In giving a command *niet mogen* is often translated *must not*, as *You must not come in*. (II § 70)

§ 237. Note: *he may or may not like it* (misschien houdt hij er van, misschien ook niet); *I like him* (ik mag hem wel), etc. (S § 123; II § 71; D § 116)

SHALL AND WILL.

§ 238. *Shall* and *will* are used as notional verbs and as aux. verbs. The notional verb *shall* means *to be obliged* (Dutch *zullen* and *moeten*); *will* is the same as the Dutch *willen*, as *He shall come back; I will speak of it.* (I, xxxiv and lxi; II § 75)

§ 239. Though not in every-day language, *will* may be used as a transitive verb of the regular conjugation, as *God has willed it.* (D § 117)

§ 240. Mere futurity in non-interrogative sentences is expressed by *shall* for the 1st pers., *will* for the 2nd and 3rd persons. In interrogative sentences *shall* is used for the 1st and 2nd pers., *will* for the 3rd; note that in the translation of *wel? niet waar? will you* is used instead of *shall you*, as *You will not do it, will you?* (II § 73)

§ 241. In an indirect quotation the same aux. is used as in the direct quotation, as *He says he shall be in time.* (II § 74)

§ 242. *Should* is used for the 1st pers., *would* for the 2nd and 3rd, in sentences depending upon a condition, expressed or understood, also in indirect quotations, as *He said that he (himself) would have been killed if I had not come to his aid.* (S § 124; II § 78)

§ 243. *Shall* and *should* are used in depend. clauses for all three persons when instead of the simple form of the subj. mood the compound form with *shall* and *should* is used, as *Wait till he shall have arrived; Should (mocht) he come in, what then?* (S § 125; II § 79)

§ 244. Note the use of *shall* and *should*:

a. after impers. expr. such as *it is strange, it is right*, etc., and some others that convey the same meaning, as *I regret, the marvel is*, etc., where *should* is used even when in Dutch we use the pres. or perf. of the indic. mood, to express what *should* or *should not be*, as *it is strange that he should be (is) here;* (D § 120; S § 127)

b. in dependent clauses beginning with *why*, where *should*

Note: no farther than *this* (hier eerst), etc. (S § 44, 8)

§ 254. *Bijna niet*, *bijna niets*, etc. are rendered by *hardly*, *hardly anything*, etc. (II § 223)

§ 255. Note: *as far back as* (reeds in) 1800; *he happened (chanced) to see me*, or *it happened (chanced) that I saw him*; *it is not my fault, is it?* (het is immers mijne schuld niet); *he is not* (nog geen) *twenty*, etc. (S § 134; II §§ 224 — 225; D §§ 153, 155 — 157)

PLACE OF THE ADVERB.

§ 256. Mark the following rules for the place of the adv.:

a. Adverbs of *indef. time*, and some others such as *now*, *then*, *also*, *perhaps*, *hardly*, *scarcely*, *vainly*, are placed in simple tenses between subj. and verb, as *I always go there*; in compound tenses after the first aux., as *I have never seen it*. Note that these adverbs are placed after the simple tenses of *to be*, and after *may*, *can*, etc., as *He is often at home*.

b. Adv. of *indef. time* are placed before *to be*, *to have*, *to do*, *can*, *may*, etc. in expr. like *I can't bear it*; *I never can*, when the rest of the predicate is omitted.

c. Adv. and adv. phrases of *place* and of *def. time*, are put at the end of the sentence, as *Let us leave to-morrow*; *let us go to Paris*; in non-interrogative sentences they may also be placed at the head of the sentence, as *In London I met with a friend of mine*. Those of *place* are put before those of *def. time*, as *I shall go to Paris to-morrow*.

d. Adv. of *manner* such as *gladly*, *heartily*, etc. are placed in simple tenses between subj. and verb, in compound tenses after the *last* aux. verb; if emphasized, they are put after the verb or, with trans. verbs, after the obj., as *I gladly welcomed him*; *We had been gayly talking together*; *He writes (this letter) very well*.

When however, the adv. is not **restrictive**, when it does not serve to *restrict* or *qualify* the action expressed by the verb, but is **continuative**, and stands for a continuative clause, it is placed between subj. and verb, or after the *first* aux. verb, as *He wisely did it* = He did it, which (and this) was wise; *It has wisely been left unfinished*.

e. *Only* is placed before the word it qualifies, as *only I saw him*, *I only saw him*, *I saw only him* or *him only*, because here it qualifies the last part of the sentence. When there can be no ambiguity, it is often placed before the verb, as *We only want to see him*.

f. Verbal phrases consisting of verb and adv., as *to put on*, *to pull off*, have the obj. **before** the adv. when it is a *pron.*, **after** or **before** the adv. when it is a *noun*, **after** the adv. when it is a *depend. clause*, as *I put it on*; *I put on my hat* or *I put my hat on*; *I put on what she gave me*.

g. Adverbs qualifying adjectives or other adverbs are placed before the word they qualify, as *He is very kind*; except *enough*, as *He is kind enough*. (II §§ 226—230; S § 132; D § 158)

§ 257. In order to avoid *ambiguity*, or for the sake of *emphasis*, we sometimes depart from the rules laid down in the preceding paragraph; see D §§ 159—160.

THE PREPOSITION.

§ 258. Full details about the various renderings of the English prepositions are given in II §§ 231—271, of the Dutch prepositions in S §§ 135—136.

A long alphabetical list of verbs, adjectives, etc. with the prepositions they require, is found in II pp. 114—138.

THE CONJUNCTION.

§ 259. Conjunctions are *co-ordinating* or *sub-ordinating*. Co-ordinating conjunctions, conjunctive adverbs, and adverbs expressing co-ordination are: *and*, *nor*, *also*, etc., as *My father and mother*; *I have not been there, nor do I like to go*; *I knew it, my father also was aware of it*.

Sub-ordinating conjunctions and conjunctive adverbs are: *that*, *when*, *after*, *if*, etc., as *I knew that he would come*; *I spoke to him after I had seen you*. (II §§ 272—274; S §§ 137—138)

§ 260. *Correlatives* are: *neither ... nor*, *hardly ... when*,

scarcely . . . when, no sooner . . . than, as . . . so, etc., as Neither he nor his wife now speaks about it; Hardly (scarcely) had I seen him when I left the room; No sooner had I entered than he saw me; As the needle of the compass points to the pole, so my affections point to you. (D § 170)

§ 261. *As* may be a conjunction, which *like* never is; so we must say, *he fights as only a hero can fight. As* also means *being, in the quality of*; *like* is followed by an objective case, gives an answer to the question *how*, and also means *gelijk, zooals, as He went to India as a common soldier; He fought like a hero; What do you expect from a poor girl like me?* (S p. 177, note; II § 275)

§ 262. *When* (toen, ten tijde dat, **nadat**) has especial reference to time; *as* (toen, ten tijde dat) principally says what was done, or what happened, when something else took place, *as he fell as he crossed the street; I sat down when I had closed the door. (II § 277; S p. 175, note 1)*

§ 263. For the difference between *because, as, since, inasmuch as*, see D § 161, II § 276; for the other renderings of *as*, see D §§ 162–163.

§ 264. *But* may be a *preposition*, *as none but me*, an *adverb*, *as there are but five*, a *conjunction*, *as Who knows but he may be right. See D § 164 for the various meanings of but.*

§ 265. *Since* may also be a *preposition*, *as I have been here since yesterday*, an *adverb*, *as I spoke to him long since*, a *conjunction*, *as I will do it since you request me.*

§ 266. *If* expresses a *condition*, *when* refers to *time*. Compare *I shall take a walk if the weather is fine* with *I shall take a walk when the weather is fine. (II § 278)*

§ 267. A few more conjunctions are explained in D §§ 165–170.

VOCABULARY.

A.

aanbieden, *to offer (to go, etc.)*.
 ning, *emotion*.
 nen (aanraken), *to touch*.
 aankomen, *to matter*.
 , *turn, talent*.
 nleggen, *to manage*.
 en vinger aanraken, *to lay
finger on*.
 iten (een algemeen bloedbad),
sake (a general slaughter).
 rden (de terugreis, enz.),
it out on (one's home-journey).
 len, *to fill*.
 iden tot eigen voordeel, *to
to one's own advantage*.
 nische opleiding, *university
ation*.
 lkaar (aaneen), *at a stretch*.
 volgen (van het ongeluk),
allow.
 en van, *to leave alone, to
away from*.
 den (intr.), *to be burnt down*.
 k doen aan, *to be deroga-
to*.
 , *to pay off, to pay*.
 en, *out-of-the-way*.
 i van het station, *to meet
the station*.
 n (een eed), *to take (an oath)*.

afleiden (gedachten), *to draw away
from*.
 afraden, *to dissuade*.
 afspreken, *to arrange*.
 afsteken bij, *to form a contrast with*.
 afwijken, *to deviate, to swerve*.
 ten anker liggen, *to be at anchor,
to ride at anchor*.

B.

Bang uur, *hour of anxiety*.
 bedekking, *cover*.
 bedenken, *to think of*.
 niets kwaads bedoelen, *to mean
no harm*.
 bedreiging, *threat*.
 bedriegelijk, *deceptive*.
 beetnemen, *to take in*.
 begrijpelijk, *intelligible*.
 behouden, *to keep*.
 bekend laten maken, *to make known,
to give notice*.
 bekleeden, *to hold*.
 bekomen (van schrik), *to recover*.
 belang, *interest*.
 belangstelling, *interest*.
 zich bemoeien met, *to interfere,
to have to do with*.
 Ik wil er mij niet mee bemoeien,
I won't have anything to do with it.

bepaalde tijd, *given time*.
 zijne krachten beproeven aan, to
 try one's hand at.
 bergval, *mountain valley*.
 berisping, *reproof*.
 in beslag nemen, *to take up*.
 besluiten, *to make up one's mind*,
 to resolve.
 besparen, *to save*.
 een bestaan zoeken, *to seek means of*
subsistence, to try to gain a livelihood.
 betrekken (van de lucht), *to become*
overcast.
 zijne bevindingen mededeelen, to
 report results, *to report about the*
state of affairs.
 bereijding, *satisfaction*.
 bewaren (behouden), *to preserve*.
 beweging (lichaams-), *exercise*.
 bureau (van eene kamer, enz.),
secretary.
 bewaardingen, *terms*.
 bezinken (onder), *to sink (under)*.
 bisschopswiel, *bishop's see*.
 een algemeen bloedbad aanrichten,
 to raise a general slaughter.
 betrekking, *relation*.
 stin. *there is death*
 con; *there is death*
 § *there is death*
 pare - *where is the*
 a walk *where is the*
 § 267 *where is the*
 §§ 165-1 *where is the*

D.

Daar (ontdekte ik), *suddenly*.
 dadelijk, *promptly*.
 iemand dankbaar zijn voor, *to thank*
any one for.
 iemand iets te danken hebben, to
 owe anything to any one.
 denkkelijk, *probably*.
 dichtknoopen, *to button up*.
 verwijtingen doen, *to cast reproaches*
(at), to make reproaches.
 doolhof, *labyrinth*.
 (een huis) met iemand doorgaan,
 to show any one over (a house).
 doornat, *wet through*.
 doorsnuffelen, *to rummage*.
 draaien, *to twist and turn*.
 drommel, *devil, wretch*.
 het druk hebben, *to be busy*.
 iemand duidelijk maken, *to make*
one see, to make it clear to one.

E.

Echtpaar, *married couple*.
 eigenaar, *proprietor, owner*.
 eischen stellen aan, *to lay on*
conditions on.
 Eskimo, *Eskimo, Esquimaux; pl*
Eskimos, Esquimaux.
 in evenredigheid met, *in propor*
tion to.

F.

Fluisterend mededeelen, *to whis*
per, to tell in a whisper.

G.

Geande maken, *to rouse, to excite*.

en en gebouwtjes, *buildings and small.*

heim, *secretly.*

ouding, *secrecy.*

, *crash.*

leur, *complexion.*

elid, *parishioner.*

et zien, *to look forward to.*

lijk, *pleasant.*

chap, *society.*

edheid brengen, *to put in iess.*

jk, *commodious.*

, *report.*

bijw.), *safely.*

t, *suitable.*

e opofferingen getroosten, *up with all sorts of sacrifices.*

geven (eene school), *to give school).*

, *cosy.*

schap van, *in company with.*

en wel, *healthy and well, ffect health.*

eidstoestand, *state of one's*

.

id, *stinginess.*

l (van den weg), *slipperiness.*

r, *glacier.*

tig, *good-natured.*

agte, *eagerly.*

(soort, hoedanigheid van grond), *soil.*

voor zekerheid, *cause for nty, degree of certainty.*

(eene aanklacht), *to base (a aint).*

H.

schijn halen, *to draw forth, duce.*

de hand slaan aan zichzelf, *to lay violent hands on oneself.*

happen naar, *to snap at, to bite at.*

zij hebben alles voor hem over, *they will do anything for him.*

in hechtenis nemen, *to take into custody.*

helder, *clear.*

helder van blik, *clear-sighted.*

herstellen (fortuin), *to repair.*

iemand het hof maken, *to pay one's addresses to any one.*

hoofdschuldige, *chief culprit, principal culprit.*

op de hoogte zijn van, *to know the smallest details of, to be well up in, to know the ins and outs of.*

zijn doel voor oogen houden, *to keep one's object (end) in view.*

huishoudelijke uitgaven, *household (housekeeping) expenses.*

I.

Inboezemen, *to inspire with.*

belangstelling inboezemen, *to interest.*

ingenomen zijn met, *to be gratified by, to be pleased with.*

inhalen, *to overtake.*

inkoop, *purchase.*

inrichten (voor rijtuigen, enz.), *to make.*

inroepen (roepen om), *to call for.*

al zijne krachten inspannen, *to do one's utmost, to exert one's utmost strength.*

inwilligen, *to comply with, to satisfy.*

J.

Jammerlijk (bijw.), *miserably, pitifully*
 jassenkast, *cloak-room*.

K.

kalm van hoofd, *cool-headed*.
 kalmte (rust), *tranquillity*.
 kalmte (bedaarheid), *composure*.
 op een kist, *chest*.
 op klaarlichten dag, *in broad daylight*.
 kleurloos, *colourless, bar of paints*.
 kleuren (bedekken), *to cover*.
 knutsel, *workman*.
 knutselen, *to work*.
 wantrouwen knutselen tegen, *to mistrust, to feel distrust for, to mistrust suspicion towards*.
 kuiszaamheid, *modesty*.
 er kwam geen einde aan, *there was no end to*.
 het kost moeite, *there is a difficulty in*.
 kosten (tijd), *to take (time)*.
 kwaadspreken, *to speak evil*.

L.

Landgoed, *estate*.
 langwerpig, *oblong*.
 laten (niet doen), *to leave undone*.
 letsel, *injury, harm*.
 lichtgeloovigheid, *credulity*.
 het op een loopen zetten, *to take to one's heels*.
 lijnrecht staan tegenover, *to be diametrically opposed (to)*.

M.

March, *march*.
 op march zijn, *to be on march*.
 mededeeling doen van, *to form of*.
 meedoen aan, *to join in*.
 meerderheid (overmacht), *sup numbers*.
 meerderheid (het grootste gedeelte), *majority*.
 melding maken van, *to make mention of, to mention*.
 menschelijkerwijze, *humanly*.
 middelmatige, *average*.
 misloopen (zijne carrière), *to (in one's career)*.
 Mongoolsch, *Mongolian*.

N.

Nadeel, *prejudice*.
 nakomen (belofte), *to fulfil*.
 natuur (landschap), *scenery*.
 nazien (drukproeven), *to look*.
 den najver opwekken van, *excite emulation in*.
 een einde nemen, *to come to end*.
 het neemt niet weg, *it does not alter the fact*.
 neerdrücken, *to weigh (he) upon*.

O.

Oligarchie, *oligarchy*.
 omgaan met, *to associate*.
 omslaan, *to turn*.

anbaar, *impossible*.
 nd zijn met, *to be ignorant*
to be unacquainted with.
 den, *unadvised, rash*.
 rgd, *easy*.
 r, *thanklessness*.
 loen voor, *to be inferior to*.
 onderscheiden, *to be distin-*
hed.
 scheppen, *to intercept*.
 veg zijn, *to be on the way*.
 , *mischief*.
 wijde, *uninitiated*.
 ken, *to be wanting*.
 ooping, *development of the*
, dénouement.
 en, *to analyze*.
 ring, *disturbance*.
 an, *to spring up*.
 kken aan (de handen), *to*
er from.
 kelen bij iemand, *to devel-*
in any one.
 lijk, *terrible*.
 ntzeggen, *to deny oneself*.
 uwen, *to enervate*.
 rwaardelijke gehoorzaam-
 l, *implicit obedience*.
 htbaar (van jaren), *unfruitful*.
 penbaar, *openly*.
 n, *to hoard*.
 end, *growing, rising*.
 en als deelgenoot, *to take*
partner.
 npagnieschap opnemen, *to*
into partnership.
 nen, *to enumerate*.
 nachtig, *supreme*.
 en (voor den rechter), *to*
non.

opzet, *plot*.
 opwekking, *irritating-up, excite-*
tion.
 opwekken, *to rouse, to excite*.
 schenen, *to arrange, to put in*
order.
 ondergaan, *hoogte leedigh, uit den*
overbrengen, to deliver.
 overbrengen met, *to send*
zich overgeven aan, to undergo
(in).
 overhandigen, *to deliver*.
 iemand aan zijn lot overlaten, *to*
leave one to his fate.
 overschrijden, *to cross*.
 overtocht, *passage*.
 overtreffen, *to exceed*.
 overvloedig, *plentiful*.
 overzien, *to see over*.

P.

in de pan hakken, *to cut to pieces,*
to annihilate.
 particulier (bijv. nw.), *private*.
 passage (verkeer), *traffic*.
 patroon (werkgever), *employer*.
 plegen (bedrog), *to practise*.
 plegen (misdad), *to commit*.
 plezier aan iets hebben, *to enjoy*
anything.
 poging (krachtsinspanning), *effort*.
 priëel, *summer-house*.
 het is te prijzen, *it is praiseworthy*.

R.

Receptie, *reception*.
 redenaarstalent, *gifts of eloquence,*
oratorical gifts.

redeneering, *argument*.

regelen, *to regulate, to arrange, to order*.

er op rekenen (er om denken), *to mind*.

rekenschap geven van, *to give (good, etc.) reasons for*.

zijne schreden richten, *to direct one's steps*.

aan het roer (stuurrad), *at the wheel*.

rondkomen, *to make both ends meet*.

ruim, *spacious*.

ruw (lomp, onbeleefd), *rude*.

ruzie krijgen, *to fall to quarrelling, to fall out*.

S.

Schaats, *skate*.

op schaatsen terugkeeren, *to come back skating, to come back on the ice, to skate back*.

zich scharen om, *to draw round*.

schipbrenkeling, *shipwrecked man*.

schreeuwen, *to scream*.

schuiven, *to push*.

schuld (het schuldig zijn), *guilt*.

schuld (bijv., dat is uwe schuld), *fault*.

schijnsel, *glimmer*.

de hand slaan aan zichzelf, *to lay violent hands upon oneself*.

na zich sleepen (ongeluk enz.), *to bring in one's train*.

ten slotte, *in the end*.

sluiten (vriendschap, enz.), *to form, to contract*.

spaarbank, *savings-bank*.

spookachtig, *ghostly*.

staan op (van een thermome-
to be at, to stand at.

stamboom, *pedigree*.

standvastigheid (flinkheid), *firm*.

iemand voor oogen stellen
present to any one.

stilte (geheimhouding), *secrecy*
strafwerk, *task*.

stremmen (de passage), *to stop traffic*.

streven naar (een doel), *to s
for (an object), to aim at*.

strooming, *current*.

een stuk wild, *a head of gam*.

sukkel, *slowcoach*.

suprematie, *supremacy*.

T.

Tegenzin, *dislike*.

teisteren, *to afflict*.

terugreis, *journey home, h
journey*.

terugtocht, *march back*.

timmergereedschap, *carpenter'
tools*.

toebrengen, *to inflict upon*.

toedragen (liefde, enz.), *to be*

toenadering, *reconciliation*.

zich toedragen, *to happen*.

in toepassing brengen, *to put
practice, to apply*.

toestaan, *to consent to*.

toewijzen, *to assign*.

treffen (van rampen), *to fall*

het treft toevallig, *it is a
circumstance, it is a happy
cidence*.

Triple Alliantie, *Triple Allian*

neken, *to quarrel, to pick
ups.*
oep, *lapse (of time).*

U.

n, *to deal out.*
uitgooien, *to turn out.*
ouden, *to hold out.*
n, *to choose.*
look-out.
n (een deel), *to form.*
en boven, *to surpass.*
n van, *to rest from.*
en, *to tug out, to tug out
harbour).*
ien, *to spread.*
n, *to turn out.*
ig, *outward.*
n, *to look out.*

V.

anch of business, *trade.*
ngst doen, *to make a catch.*
dend, *tenacious.*
much sooner, *sooner.*
hend, *exacting.*
oordeel), *to pass.*
sen, *to turn pale.*
len zijn aan, *to be associated*

en, *to divide.*
ngsverdrag, *treaty of division.*
rdienstelijk maken tegen-
to deserve well of.
ien, *to rarefy.*
zen (bevatten), *to combine.*
zing, *society, club.*
akkelijken, *to facilitate.*

zich vergissen in, *to mistake.*
vergrijp, *offence.*
zich vergrijpen aan (geld), *to lay
dishonest hands on, to make free
with.*
zich verkiesbaar stellen, *to be the
candidate of a party, to accept
a candidature.*
stelt gij u verkiesbaar? *will you
be our candidate?*
verkoop, *sale, auction.*
hulp verleen, *to lend one's as-
sistance.*
verliefd worden, *to fall in love.*
verlossen, *to deliver.*
vermaken (geld, enz.), *to bequeath.*
vermeerdering, *increase.*
vermogen, *to avail.*
verpleegster, *nurse.*
verscheuren (een brief, enz.), *to
tear up.*
verzoenen, *to reconcile.*
vloeken tegen, *to swear at.*
op een goeden voet komen met,
to get on good terms with, *to
obtain a good footing with.*
volbrengen, *to accomplish.*
volwassen, *grown-up.*
het voor en tegen, *the pros and cons.*
in zijn voordeel veranderen, *to
change to one's advantage.*
voortdurend, *lasting.*
voortkomen uit, *to spring from.*
vorm van een boek, *book form.*
vraag, *demand.*
vroolijkheid, *cheerfulness.*
vuurtoren, *light-house.*
vijandig, *hostile.*
vijandig gezind, *hostile (to), un-
friendly disposed (to).*

W.

Weerstand bieden, *to resist, to withstand.*
 wegbergen, *to put away.*
 het meest laten wegen, *to consider most, to consider first.*
 wegjagen, *to drive away.*
 het neemt niet weg, *it does not alter the fact.*
 wenschelijkheid, *desirability.*
 wereldstad, *metropolis.*
 werven, *to recruit.*
 wijten, *to blame.*
 iemand op iets wijzen, *to point out anything to any one.*

Z.

Zeer (ten zeerste), *sorely.*
 zijne zinnen op iets zetten, *to set one's heart on.*
 er zit iets achter, *there is something behind.*
 zonderling, *strange.*
 zucht (tot), *love (of).*
 zoo zuinig mogelijk leven, *to pinch oneself.*
 zuiver (geweten), *clear.*
 zij bereikten zwemmende het land, *they reached the shore by swimming.*

DUTCH AND ENGLISH COMPARED,

BY

P. ROORDA.

Part I. (Grammatical). Second edition. With an Appendix containing the rules of English Grammar f 1.90.

Part II. (Free Translations). Second edition. f 1.00.

Part I. is in de eerste plaats eene voortzetting en aanvulling van het 2de deel der „Engelsche Spraakkunst voor schoolgebruik.”

BEOORDEELINGEN.

„Dit werk verdient in hooge mate de aandacht van iederen beoefenaar der Engelsche taal, omdat het is: 1º, de vrucht van zelfstandig onderzoek; 2º, het resultaat en methodisch geregelde lectuur. Al zou de man, die zich op de hoogte van de Engelsche grammatica wil stellen, er alléén maar uit leeren, hoe hij met het oog op alle een doel moet lezen, dan reeds had het boek zijn doel bereikt.

Een rijkdom van diktie, idiotismen en schrandere opmerkingen vinden wij in de ongeveer 200 pagina's, waarvoor ieder respect zal hebben. Eene woordenlijst van ruim pagina's (in twee kolommen) geeft hulp, waar die noodig mocht blijken.

Dit zijn enkele van mijne opmerkingen omtrent een boek, dat door ieder, die een ernstige studie van de Engelsche taal wil maken, ter hand genomen moet worden. Het zal ten eerste het inzicht in den bouw van de Engelsche taal bevorderen.”

(Museum.)

K. TEN BUGGENCATE.

„Wij bevelen het gebruik van dit werk zeer aan.”

(Chr. Schoolbode.)

„Als aanvulling bij andere leerboeken kan dit samenstel van 935 Engelsche en 31 Nederlandsche onsamenhangende zinnen, met enkele korte duidelijke spraakkunstregels er tusschen, een uitstekend hulpmiddel worden genoemd.”

(Het Schoolblad.)

„De heer Roorda, leeraar aan het gymnasium te Groningen, die zich reeds in de wetenschappelijke wereld een naam maakte als phonetist, heeft ons nu een boek geschonken, dat in zijn soort uitstekend en zonder weerga is.”

(De Vereeniging.)

Dr. G. DUFLOU.

„Wij bevelen dan ook ten eerste nadere kennismaking met dit werk aan. Het zal, naast de vele andere leerboeken, zijn weg wel vinden, en beiden genoegzaam verschaffen.”

(N. Prov. Gron. Ct.)

„Bewust boekje is dus geroepen om veel dienst te doen.”

(De Toekomst.)

Uitgaven van P. NOORDHOFF te Groningen.

- Prof. Dr. R. S. TIJADEN MODDERMAN**, Het oudste Faust-Drama (Marlowe)
f 1,90.
- P. ROORDA**, Engelsehe Spraakkunst voor Schoolgebruik. Eerste deel.
Vierde druk. f 1,25. Supplement op het Eerste deel f 1,25. Tweede
deel, Derde druk f 1,25
- P. ROORDA**, Dutch and English Compared. Part. I. (Grammatical). Second edi-
tion. With an Appendix containing the rules of English Grammar f 1,90
Part. II. (Free translations) Second edition f 1,00
- H. C. SPRUYT**, English without a Master (Het Engelsch zonder Meester).
Practische en gemakkelijke Methode om zonder onderwijzer, alleen
door zelfoefening, in korten tijd deze taal te leeren lezen, spreken en
schrijven f 12,50
- J. N. VALKHOFF**, The Young Teacher. Allereerst Engelsch Lesboekje.
Zesde druk f 0,50
- J. N. VALKHOFF**, Volledige Leercursus der Engelsehe Taal. Eerste Stukje.
Tiende, veel verm. druk. (De voornaamste regels der spraakkunst en
de belangrijkste en meest voorkomende vormen en wendingen der taal)
f 0,90
Tweede stukje, zevende, verm. druk. (Uitbreiding van het geleerde in
't voorgaande stukje. De spraakkunst in haren geheel en omvang.
Uitzonderingen. Nieuwe vormen en taalwendingen.) . . . f 1,20
Derde stukje, derde druk. (A sequel to parts I and II.) . . f 1,20
- J. N. VALKHOFF**, Morceaux choisis destinés à être traduits en anglais.
f 0,60
- J. N. VALKHOFF**, The First English Reader. Allereerst Engelsch lees-
en vertaalboek f 0,50
- J. N. VALKHOFF**, First English Reading-Book. Being an Introduction to
the English Reader. Eighth Edition f 0,60
- J. N. VALKHOFF**, The English Reader. A Choice Miscellany of Tales,
Narratives, Historical Pieces, Fables, etc. etc. Selected from the
best modern Authors and Periodicals. Sixth Edition . . . f 0,90
- J. N. VALKHOFF**, Vocabulary. Containing such words and familiar Phra-
ses as are often used in Conversation. Fourth Edition. Revised and
augmented f 0,80
- J. N. VALKHOFF**, The Traveller's Companion, naar PLOETZ' Sprachführer.
f 0,80



1

--

2

3

4



THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
GRADUATE LIBRARY

DATE DUE

SEP 13 1978

SEP 6 1978